

# The L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X3 Interfaces

The L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X3 Project\*

February 7, 2012

## Abstract

This is the reference documentation for the `expl3` programming environment. The `expl3` modules set up an experimental naming scheme for L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X commands, which allow the L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X programmer to systematically name functions and variables, and specify the argument types of functions.

The T<sub>E</sub>X and  $\varepsilon$ -T<sub>E</sub>X primitives are all given a new name according to these conventions. However, in the main direct use of the primitives is not required or encouraged: the `expl3` modules define an independent low-level L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X3 programming language.

At present, the `expl3` modules are designed to be loaded on top of L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X 2 $\varepsilon$ . In time, a L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X3 format will be produced based on this code. This allows the code to be used in L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X 2 $\varepsilon$  packages *now* while a stand-alone L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X3 is developed.

**While `expl3` is still experimental, the bundle is now regarded as broadly stable. The syntax conventions and functions provided are now ready for wider use. There may still be changes to some functions, but these will be minor when compared to the scope of `expl3`.**

New modules will be added to the distributed version of `expl3` as they reach maturity.

---

\*E-mail: [latex-team@latex-project.org](mailto:latex-team@latex-project.org)

# Contents

<b>I</b>	<b>Introduction to <code>expl3</code> and this document</b>	<b>1</b>
<b>1</b>	<b>Naming functions and variables</b>	<b>1</b>
1.1	Terminological inexactitude . . . . .	3
<b>2</b>	<b>Documentation conventions</b>	<b>3</b>
<b>3</b>	<b>Formal language conventions which apply generally</b>	<b>5</b>
<b>II</b>	<b>The <code>l3bootstrap</code> package: Bootstrap code</b>	<b>6</b>
<b>4</b>	<b>Using the <code>LaTeX3</code> modules</b>	<b>6</b>
<b>III</b>	<b>The <code>l3names</code> package: Namespace for primitives</b>	<b>8</b>
<b>5</b>	<b>Setting up the <code>LaTeX3</code> programming language</b>	<b>8</b>
<b>IV</b>	<b>The <code>l3basics</code> package: Basic definitions</b>	<b>9</b>
<b>6</b>	<b>No operation functions</b>	<b>9</b>
<b>7</b>	<b>Grouping material</b>	<b>9</b>
<b>8</b>	<b>Control sequences and functions</b>	<b>10</b>
8.1	Defining functions . . . . .	10
8.2	Defining new functions using primitive parameter text . . . . .	10
8.3	Defining new functions using the signature . . . . .	12
8.4	Copying control sequences . . . . .	15
8.5	Deleting control sequences . . . . .	15
8.6	Showing control sequences . . . . .	16
8.7	Converting to and from control sequences . . . . .	16
<b>9</b>	<b>Using or removing tokens and arguments</b>	<b>17</b>
9.1	Selecting tokens from delimited arguments . . . . .	19
9.2	Decomposing control sequences . . . . .	19
<b>10</b>	<b>Predicates and conditionals</b>	<b>20</b>
10.1	Tests on control sequences . . . . .	21
10.2	Testing string equality . . . . .	22
10.3	Engine-specific conditionals . . . . .	22
10.4	Primitive conditionals . . . . .	22

11	Internal kernel functions	23
12	Experimental functions	24
<b>V</b>	<b>The <code>l3expan</code> package: Argument expansion</b>	<b>25</b>
13	Defining new variants	25
14	Methods for defining variants	26
15	Introducing the variants	26
16	Manipulating the first argument	27
17	Manipulating two arguments	28
18	Manipulating three arguments	29
19	Unbraced expansion	30
20	Preventing expansion	30
21	Internal functions and variables	32
<b>VI</b>	<b>The <code>l3prg</code> package: Control structures</b>	<b>33</b>
22	Defining a set of conditional functions	33
23	The boolean data type	35
24	Boolean expressions	36
25	Logical loops	37
26	Switching by case	38
27	Producing $n$ copies	40
28	Detecting <code>T<sub>E</sub>X</code> 's mode	40
29	Internal programming functions	41
30	Experimental programmings functions	42
<b>VII</b>	<b>The <code>l3quark</code> package: Quarks</b>	<b>44</b>

31	Defining quarks	44
32	Quark tests	45
33	Recursion	45
34	Scan marks	46
35	Internal quark functions	47
<b>VIII The l3token package: Token manipulation</b>		<b>48</b>
36	All possible tokens	48
37	Character tokens	49
38	Generic tokens	52
39	Converting tokens	53
40	Token conditionals	53
41	Peeking ahead at the next token	56
42	Decomposing a macro definition	59
43	Experimental token functions	60
<b>IX The l3int package: Integers</b>		<b>62</b>
44	Integer expressions	62
45	Creating and initialising integers	63
46	Setting and incrementing integers	64
47	Using integers	64
48	Integer expression conditionals	65
49	Integer expression loops	65
50	Formatting integers	67
51	Converting from other formats to integers	69
52	Viewing integers	70

53	Constant integers	70
54	Scratch integers	71
55	Internal functions	71
<b>X</b>	<b>The <code>l3skip</code> package: Dimensions and skips</b>	<b>73</b>
56	Creating and initialising <code>dim</code> variables	73
57	Setting <code>dim</code> variables	73
58	Utilities for dimension calculations	74
59	Dimension expression conditionals	75
60	Dimension expression loops	76
61	Using <code>dim</code> expressions and variables	77
62	Viewing <code>dim</code> variables	77
63	Constant dimensions	77
64	Scratch dimensions	78
65	Creating and initialising <code>skip</code> variables	78
66	Setting <code>skip</code> variables	78
67	Skip expression conditionals	79
68	Using <code>skip</code> expressions and variables	79
69	Viewing <code>skip</code> variables	80
70	Constant skips	80
71	Scratch skips	80
72	Creating and initialising <code>muskip</code> variables	81
73	Setting <code>muskip</code> variables	81
74	Using <code>muskip</code> expressions and variables	82
75	Inserting skips into the output	82

76	Viewing muskip variables	82
77	Internal functions	83
78	Experimental skip functions	83
79	Internal functions	84
<b>XI</b>	<b>The l3tl package: Token lists</b>	<b>85</b>
80	Creating and initialising token list variables	85
81	Adding data to token list variables	86
82	Modifying token list variables	86
83	Reassigning token list category codes	87
84	Reassigning token list character codes	88
85	Token list conditionals	88
86	Mapping to token lists	90
87	Using token lists	91
88	Working with the content of token lists	91
89	The first token from a token list	93
90	Viewing token lists	96
91	Constant token lists	96
92	Scratch token lists	96
93	Experimental token list functions	97
94	Internal functions	98
<b>XII</b>	<b>The l3seq package: Sequences and stacks</b>	<b>99</b>
95	Creating and initialising sequences	99
96	Appending data to sequences	100
97	Recovering items from sequences	100

98	Modifying sequences	101
99	Sequence conditionals	101
100	Mapping to sequences	102
101	Sequences as stacks	103
102	Viewing sequences	104
103	Experimental sequence functions	104
104	Internal sequence functions	106
<b>XIII</b>	<b>The l3clist package: Comma separated lists</b>	<b>108</b>
105	Creating and initialising comma lists	108
106	Adding data to comma lists	109
107	Using comma lists	109
108	Modifying comma lists	110
109	Comma list conditionals	110
110	Mapping to comma lists	111
111	Comma lists as stacks	113
112	Viewing comma lists	114
113	Scratch comma lists	114
114	Experimental comma list functions	114
115	Internal comma-list functions	115
<b>XIV</b>	<b>The l3prop package: Property lists</b>	<b>116</b>
116	Creating and initialising property lists	116
117	Adding entries to property lists	117
118	Recovering values from property lists	117
119	Modifying property lists	118

120	Property list conditionals	118
121	Recovering values from property lists with branching	118
122	Mapping to property lists	119
123	Viewing property lists	120
124	Experimental property list functions	120
125	Internal property list functions	121
<b>XV</b>	<b>The l3box package: Boxes</b>	<b>122</b>
126	Creating and initialising boxes	122
127	Using boxes	123
128	Measuring and setting box dimensions	123
129	Affine transformations	124
130	Viewing part of a box	126
131	Box conditionals	126
132	The last box inserted	127
133	Constant boxes	127
134	Scratch boxes	127
135	Viewing box contents	127
136	Horizontal mode boxes	127
137	Vertical mode boxes	129
138	Primitive box conditionals	131
139	Experimental box functions	131
<b>XVI</b>	<b>The l3coffins package: Coffin code layer</b>	<b>132</b>
140	Creating and initialising coffins	132
141	Setting coffin content and poles	132



142	Coffin transformations	133
143	Joining and using coffins	134
144	Measuring coffins	135
145	Coffin diagnostics	135
<b>XVII</b>	<b>The <code>l3color</code> package: Colour support</b>	<b>136</b>
146	Colour in boxes	136
<b>XVIII</b>	<b>The <code>l3io</code> package: Input–output operations</b>	<b>137</b>
147	Managing streams	137
148	Writing to files	138
149	Wrapping lines in output	140
150	Reading from files	141
151	Constants	141
152	Experimental functions	142
153	Internal input–output functions	142
<b>XIX</b>	<b>The <code>l3msg</code> package: Messages</b>	<b>144</b>
154	Creating new messages	144
155	Contextual information for messages	145
156	Issuing messages	146
157	Redirecting messages	147
158	Low-level message functions	148
159	Kernel-specific functions	149
160	Expandable errors	150
161	Internal <code>l3msg</code> functions	151

<b>XX</b>	<b>The <code>l3keys</code> package: Key–value interfaces</b>	<b>152</b>
162	Creating keys	153
163	Sub-dividing keys	157
164	Choice and multiple choice keys	158
165	Setting keys	160
166	Setting known keys only	160
167	Utility functions for keys	161
168	Low-level interface for parsing key–val lists	161
<b>XXI</b>	<b>The <code>l3file</code> package: File operations</b>	<b>163</b>
169	File operation functions	163
170	Internal file functions	164
<b>XXII</b>	<b>The <code>l3fp</code> package: Floating-point operations</b>	<b>166</b>
171	Floating-point variables	166
172	Conversion of floating point values to other formats	167
173	Rounding floating point values	168
174	Floating-point conditionals	169
175	Unary floating-point operations	169
176	Floating-point arithmetic	170
177	Floating-point power operations	170
178	Exponential and logarithm functions	171
179	Trigonometric functions	171
180	Constant floating point values	171
181	Notes on the floating point unit	172

<b>XXIII</b>	<b>The <code>l3luatex</code> package: LuaTeX-specific functions</b>	<b>173</b>
<b>182</b>	<b>Breaking out to Lua</b>	<b>173</b>
<b>183</b>	<b>Category code tables</b>	<b>174</b>
	<b>Index</b>	<b>176</b>

## Part I

# Introduction to expl3 and this document

This document is intended to act as a comprehensive reference manual for the `expl3` language. A general guide to the `LATEX3` programming language is found in [expl3.pdf](#).

## 1 Naming functions and variables

`LATEX3` does not use `@` as a “letter” for defining internal macros. Instead, the symbols `_` and `:` are used in internal macro names to provide structure. The name of each *function* is divided into logical units using `_`, while `:` separates the *name* of the function from the *argument specifier* (“arg-spec”). This describes the arguments expected by the function. In most cases, each argument is represented by a single letter. The complete list of arg-spec letters for a function is referred to as the *signature* of the function.

Each function name starts with the *module* to which it belongs. Thus apart from a small number of very basic functions, all `expl3` function names contain at least one underscore to divide the module name from the descriptive name of the function. For example, all functions concerned with comma lists are in module `clist` and begin `\clist_`.

Every function must include an argument specifier. For functions which take no arguments, this will be blank and the function name will end `:`. Most functions take one or more arguments, and use the following argument specifiers:

- D** The **D** specifier means *do not use*. All of the `TEX` primitives are initially `\let` to a **D** name, and some are then given a second name. Only the kernel team should use anything with a **D** specifier!
- N and n** These mean *no manipulation*, of a single token for **N** and of a set of tokens given in braces for **n**. Both pass the argument through exactly as given. Usually, if you use a single token for an **n** argument, all will be well.
- c** This means *csname*, and indicates that the argument will be turned into a *csname* before being used. So `\foo:c {ArgumentOne}` will act in the same way as `\foo:N \ArgumentOne`.
- V and v** These mean *value of variable*. The **V** and **v** specifiers are used to get the content of a variable without needing to worry about the underlying `TEX` structure containing the data. A **V** argument will be a single token (similar to **N**), for example `\foo:V \MyVariable`; on the other hand, using **v** a *csname* is constructed first, and then the value is recovered, for example `\foo:v {MyVariable}`.
- o** This means *expansion once*. In general, the **V** and **v** specifiers are favoured over **o** for recovering stored information. However, **o** is useful for correctly processing information with delimited arguments.

- x** The **x** specifier stands for *exhaustive expansion*: every token in the argument is fully expanded until only unexpandable ones remain. The `\edef` primitive carries out this type of expansion. Functions which feature an **x**-type argument are in general *not* expandable, unless specifically noted.
- f** The **f** specifier stands for *full expansion*, and in contrast to **x** stops at the first non-expandable item (reading the argument from left to right) without trying to expand it. For example, when setting a token list variable (a macro used for storage), the sequence

```
\tl_set:Nn \l_my_a_tl { A }
\tl_set:Nn \l_my_b_tl { B }
\tl_set:Nf \l_my_a_tl { \l_my_a_tl \l_my_b_tl }
```

will leave `\l_my_a_tl` with the content `A\l_my_b_tl`, as `A` cannot be expanded and so terminates expansion before `\l_my_b_tl` is considered.

- T and F** For logic tests, there are the branch specifiers **T** (*true*) and **F** (*false*). Both specifiers treat the input in the same way as **n** (no change), but make the logic much easier to see.
- p** The letter **p** indicates `TeX parameters`. Normally this will be used for delimited functions as `expl3` provides better methods for creating simple sequential arguments.
- w** Finally, there is the **w** specifier for *weird* arguments. This covers everything else, but mainly applies to delimited values (where the argument must be terminated by some arbitrary string).

Notice that the argument specifier describes how the argument is processed prior to being passed to the underlying function. For example, `\foo:c` will take its argument, convert it to a control sequence and pass it to `\foo:N`.

Variables are named in a similar manner to functions, but begin with a single letter to define the type of variable:

- c** Constant: global parameters whose value should not be changed.
- g** Parameters whose value should only be set globally.
- l** Parameters whose value should only be set locally.

Each variable name is then build up in a similar way to that of a function, typically starting with the module<sup>1</sup> name and then a descriptive part. Variables end with a short identifier to show the variable type:

**bool** Either true or false.

**box** Box register.

---

<sup>1</sup>The module names are not used in case of generic scratch registers defined in the data type modules, e.g., the `int` module contains some scratch variables called `\l_tmpa_int`, `\l_tmpb_int`, and so on. In such a case adding the module name up front to denote the module and in the back to indicate the type, as in `\l_int_tmpa_int` would be very unreadable.

**clist** Comma separated list.

**coffin** a “box with handles” — a higher-level data type for carrying out **box** alignment operations.

**dim** “Rigid” lengths.

**fp** floating-point values;

**int** Integer-valued count register.

**prop** Property list.

**seq** “Sequence”: a data-type used to implement lists (with access at both ends) and stacks.

**skip** “Rubber” lengths.

**stream** An input or output stream (for reading from or writing to, respectively).

**tl** Token list variables: placeholder for a token list.

## 1.1 Terminological inexactitude

A word of warning. In this document, and others referring to the **expl3** programming modules, we often refer to “variables” and “functions” as if they were actual constructs from a real programming language. In truth, **T<sub>E</sub>X** is a macro processor, and functions are simply macros that may or may not take arguments and expand to their replacement text. Many of the common variables are *also* macros, and if placed into the input stream will simply expand to their definition as well — a “function” with no arguments and a “token list variable” are in truth one and the same. On the other hand, some “variables” are actually registers that must be initialised and their values set and retrieved with specific functions.

The conventions of the **expl3** code are designed to clearly separate the ideas of “macros that contain data” and “macros that contain code”, and a consistent wrapper is applied to all forms of “data” whether they be macros or actually registers. This means that sometimes we will use phrases like “the function returns a value”, when actually we just mean “the macro expands to something”. Similarly, the term “execute” might be used in place of “expand” or it might refer to the more specific case of “processing in **T<sub>E</sub>X**’s stomach” (if you are familiar with the **T<sub>E</sub>X**book parlance).

If in doubt, please ask; chances are we’ve been hasty in writing certain definitions and need to be told to tighten up our terminology.

## 2 Documentation conventions

This document is typeset with the experimental **l3doc** class; several conventions are used to help describe the features of the code. A number of conventions are used here to make the documentation clearer.

Each group of related functions is given in a box. For a function with a “user” name, this might read:

---

`\ExplSyntaxOn`  
`\ExplSyntaxOff`

---

`\ExplSyntaxOn ... \ExplSyntaxOff`

The textual description of how the function works would appear here. The syntax of the function is shown in mono-spaced text to the right of the box. In this example, the function takes no arguments and so the name of the function is simply reprinted.

For programming functions, which use `_` and `:` in their name there are a few additional conventions: If two related functions are given with identical names but different argument specifiers, these are termed *variants* of each other, and the latter functions are printed in grey to show this more clearly. They will carry out the same function but will take different types of argument:

---

`\seq_new:N`  
`\seq_new:c`

---

`\seq_new:N`  $\langle sequence \rangle$

When a number of variants are described, the arguments are usually illustrated only for the base function. Here,  $\langle sequence \rangle$  indicates that `\seq_new:N` expects the name of a sequence. From the argument specifier, `\seq_new:c` also expects a sequence name, but as a name rather than as a control sequence. Each argument given in the illustration should be described in the following text.

**Fully expandable functions** Some functions are fully expandable, which allows it to be used within an `x`-type argument (in plain T<sub>E</sub>X terms, inside an `\edef`), as well as within an `f`-type argument. These fully expandable functions are indicated in the documentation by a star:

---

`\cs_to_str:N` ☆

---

`\cs_to_str:N`  $\langle cs \rangle$

As with other functions, some text should follow which explains how the function works. Usually, only the star will indicate that the function is expandable. In this case, the function expects a  $\langle cs \rangle$ , shorthand for a  $\langle control\ sequence \rangle$ .

**Restricted expandable functions** A few functions are fully expandable but cannot be fully expanded within an `f`-type argument. In this case a hollow star is used to indicate this:

---

`\seq_map_function:NN` ☆

---

`\seq_map_function:NN`  $\langle seq \rangle$   $\langle function \rangle$

**Conditional functions** Conditional (`if`) functions are normally defined in three variants, with `T`, `F` and `TF` argument specifiers. This allows them to be used for different “true”/“false” branches, depending on which outcome the conditional is being used to test. To indicate this without repetition, this information is given in a shortened form:

---

`\xetex_if_engine $\textit{TF}$`  ★ `\xetex_if_engine:TF {\langle true code \rangle} {\langle false code \rangle}`

---

The underlining and italic of  $\textit{TF}$  indicates that `\xetex_if_engine:T`, `\xetex_if_engine:F` and `\xetex_if_engine:TF` are all available. Usually, the illustration will use the  $\textit{TF}$  variant, and so both  $\langle true code \rangle$  and  $\langle false code \rangle$  will be shown. The two variant forms  $\textit{T}$  and  $\textit{F}$  take only  $\langle true code \rangle$  and  $\langle false code \rangle$ , respectively. Here, the star also shows that this function is expandable. With some minor exceptions, *all* conditional functions in the `expl3` modules should be defined in this way.

Variables, constants and so on are described in a similar manner:

---

`\l_tmpa_tl`

---

A short piece of text will describe the variable: there is no syntax illustration in this case.

In some cases, the function is similar to one in  $\text{\LaTeX} 2_\epsilon$  or plain  $\text{\TeX}$ . In these cases, the text will include an extra “ **$\text{\TeX}$ hackers note**” section:

---

`\token_to_str:N` ★ `\token_to_str:N \langle token \rangle`

---

The normal description text.

**$\text{\TeX}$ hackers note:** Detail for the experienced  $\text{\TeX}$  or  $\text{\LaTeX} 2_\epsilon$  programmer. In this case, it would point out that this function is the  $\text{\TeX}$  primitive `\string`.

### 3 Formal language conventions which apply generally

As this is a formal reference guide for  $\text{\LaTeX} 3$  programming, the descriptions of functions are intended to be reasonably “complete”. However, there is also a need to avoid repetition. Formal ideas which apply to general classes of function are therefore summarised here.

For tests which have a  $\textit{TF}$  argument specification, the test is evaluated to give a logically **TRUE** or **FALSE** result. Depending on this result, either the  $\langle true code \rangle$  or the  $\langle false code \rangle$  will be left in the input stream. In the case where the test is expandable, and a predicate (`_p`) variant is available, the logical value determined by the test is left in the input stream: this will typically be part of a larger logical construct.



## Part II

# The l3bootstrap package

## Bootstrap code

### 4 Using the L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X3 modules

The modules documented in `source3` are designed to be used on top of L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X 2<sub>ε</sub> and are loaded all as one with the usual `\usepackage{expl3}` or `\RequirePackage{expl3}` instructions. These modules will also form the basis of the L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X3 format, but work in this area is incomplete and not included in this documentation at present.

As the modules use a coding syntax different from standard L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X 2<sub>ε</sub> it provides a few functions for setting it up.

---

`\ExplSyntaxOn`  
`\ExplSyntaxOff`

---

Updated: 2011-08-13

---

`\ExplSyntaxOn` *<code>* `\ExplSyntaxOff`

The `\ExplSyntaxOn` function switches to a category code régime in which spaces are ignored and in which the colon (:) and underscore (\_) are treated as “letters”, thus allowing access to the names of code functions and variables. Within this environment, ~ is used to input a space. The `\ExplSyntaxOff` reverts to the document category code régime.

---

`\ExplSyntaxNamesOn`  
`\ExplSyntaxNamesOff`

---

`\ExplSyntaxNamesOn` *<code>* `\ExplSyntaxNamesOff`

The `\ExplSyntaxOn` function switches to a category code régime in which the colon (:) and underscore (\_) are treated as “letters”, thus allowing access to the names of code functions and variables. In contrast to `\ExplSyntaxOn`, using `\ExplSyntaxNamesOn` does not cause spaces to be ignored. The `\ExplSyntaxNamesOff` reverts to the document category code régime.

---

`\ProvidesExplPackage`  
`\ProvidesExplClass`  
`\ProvidesExplFile`

---

`\RequirePackage{expl3}`  
`\ProvidesExplPackage` *{<package>}* *{<date>}* *{<version>}* *{<description>}*

These functions act broadly in the same way as the L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X 2<sub>ε</sub> kernel functions `\ProvidesPackage`, `\ProvidesClass` and `\ProvidesFile`. However, they also implicitly switch `\ExplSyntaxOn` for the remainder of the code with the file. At the end of the file, `\ExplSyntaxOff` will be called to reverse this. (This is the same concept as L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X 2<sub>ε</sub> provides in turning on `\makeatletter` within package and class code.)

---

`\GetIdInfo`

---

`\RequirePackage{l3names}`  
`\GetIdInfo` *\$Id: <SVN info field> \$* *{<description>}*

Extracts all information from a SVN field. Spaces are not ignored in these fields. The information pieces are stored in separate control sequences with `\ExplFileName` for the part of the file name leading up to the period, `\ExplFileDate` for date, `\ExplFileVersion` for version and `\ExplFileDescription` for the description.

To summarize: Every single package using this syntax should identify itself using one of the above methods. Special care is taken so that every package or class file loaded with `\RequirePackage` or alike are loaded with usual  $\text{\LaTeX} 2_\epsilon$  category codes and the  $\text{\LaTeX} 3$  category code scheme is reloaded when needed afterwards. See implementation for details. If you use the `\GetIdInfo` command you can use the information when loading a package with

```
\ProvidesExplPackage{\ExplFileName}  
  {\ExplFileDate}{\ExplFileVersion}{\ExplFileDescription}
```

## Part III

# The l3names package Namespace for primitives

## 5 Setting up the L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X3 programming language

This module is at the core of the L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X3 programming language. It performs the following tasks:

- defines new names for all T<sub>E</sub>X primitives;
- switches to the category code regime for programming;
- provides support settings for building the code as a T<sub>E</sub>X format.

This module is entirely dedicated to primitives, which should not be used directly within L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X3 code (outside of “kernel-level” code). As such, the primitives are not documented here: *The T<sub>E</sub>Xbook*, *T<sub>E</sub>X by Topic* and the manuals for pdfT<sub>E</sub>X, X<sub>Y</sub>T<sub>E</sub>X and LuaT<sub>E</sub>X should be consulted for details of the primitives. These are named based on the engine which first introduced them:

`\tex_...` Introduced by T<sub>E</sub>X itself;

`\etex_...` Introduced by the  $\varepsilon$ -T<sub>E</sub>X extensions;

`\pdftex_...` Introduced by pdfT<sub>E</sub>X;

`\xetex_...` Introduced by X<sub>Y</sub>T<sub>E</sub>X;

`\luatex_...` Introduced by LuaT<sub>E</sub>X.

## Part IV

# The l3basics package

## Basic definitions

As the name suggest this package holds some basic definitions which are needed by most or all other packages in this set.

Here we describe those functions that are used all over the place. With that we mean functions dealing with the construction and testing of control sequences. Furthermore the basic parts of conditional processing are covered; conditional processing dealing with specific data types is described in the modules specific for the respective data types.

## 6 No operation functions

---

**`\prg_do_nothing`** ★**`\prg_do_nothing:`**

An expandable function which does nothing at all: leaves nothing in the input stream after a single expansion.

---

**`\scan_stop`****`\scan_stop:`**

A non-expandable function which does nothing. Does not vanish on expansion but produces no typeset output.

## 7 Grouping material

---

**`\group_begin`****`\group_begin:`**

---

**`\group_end`****`\group_end:`**

These functions begin and end a group for definition purposes. Assignments are local to groups unless carried out in a global manner. (A small number of exceptions to this rule will be noted as necessary elsewhere in this document.) Each **`\group_begin:`** must be matched by a **`\group_end:`**, although this does not have to occur within the same function. Indeed, it is often necessary to start a group within one function and finish it within another, for example when seeking to use non-standard category codes.

---

**`\group_insert_after:N`****`\group_insert_after:N`** *(token)*

Adds *(token)* to the list of *(tokens)* to be inserted when the current group level ends. The list of *(tokens)* to be inserted will be empty at the beginning of a group: multiple applications of **`\group_insert_after:N`** may be used to build the inserted list one *(token)* at a time. The current group level may be closed by a **`\group_end:`** function or by a token with category code 2 (close-group). The later will be a **`}`** if standard category codes apply.

## 8 Control sequences and functions

As T<sub>E</sub>X is a macro language, creating new functions means creating macros. At point of use, a function is replaced by the replacement text (“code”) in which each parameter in the code (**#1**, **#2**, *etc.*) is replaced the appropriate arguments absorbed by the function. In the following, *<code>* is therefore used as a shorthand for “replacement text”.

Functions which are not “protected” will be fully expanded inside an **x** expansion. In contrast, “protected” functions are not expanded within **x** expansions.

### 8.1 Defining functions

Functions can be created with no requirement that they are declared first (in contrast to variables, which must always be declared). Declaring a function before setting up the code means that the name chosen will be checked and an error raised if it is already in use. The name of a function can be checked at the point of definition using the `\cs_new...` functions: this is recommended for all functions which are defined for the first time.

There are three ways to define new functions. All classes define a function to expand to the substitution text. Within the substitution text the actual parameters are substituted for the formal parameters (**#1**, **#2**, ...).

**new** Create a new function with the **new** primitives, such as `\cs_new:Npn`. The definition is global and will result in an error if it is already defined.

**set** Create a new function with the **set** primitives, such as `\cs_set:Npn`. The definition is restricted to the current T<sub>E</sub>X group and will not result in an error if the function is already defined.

**gset** Create a new function with the **gset** primitives, such as `\cs_gset:Npn`. The definition is global and will not result in an error if the function is already defined.

Within each set of primitives there are different ways to define a function. The differences depend on restrictions on the actual parameters and the expandability of the resulting function.

**nopar** Create a new function with the **nopar** primitives, such as `\cs_set_nopar:Npn`. The parameter may not contain `\par` tokens.

**protected** Create a new function with the **protected** primitives, such as `\cs_set_protected:Npn`. The parameter may contain `\par` tokens but the function will not expand within an **x**-type expansion.

### 8.2 Defining new functions using primitive parameter text

---

<code>\cs_new:Npn</code>
<code>\cs_new:(cpn Npx cpx)</code>

---

`\cs_new:Npn <function> <parameters> {<code>}`

Creates *<function>* to expand to *<code>* as replacement text. Within the *<code>*, the *<parameters>* (**#1**, **#2**, *etc.*) will be replaced by those absorbed by the function. The definition is global and an error will result if the *<function>* is already defined.

<hr/> <code>\cs_new_nopar:Npn</code> <code>\cs_new_nopar:(cpn Npx cpx)</code> <hr/>	<code>\cs_new_nopar:Npn &lt;function&gt; &lt;parameters&gt; {&lt;code&gt;}</code> <p>Creates <math>\langle function \rangle</math> to expand to <math>\langle code \rangle</math> as replacement text. Within the <math>\langle code \rangle</math>, the <math>\langle parameters \rangle</math> (<math>\#1</math>, <math>\#2</math>, <i>etc.</i>) will be replaced by those absorbed by the function. When the <math>\langle function \rangle</math> is used the <math>\langle parameters \rangle</math> absorbed cannot contain <code>\par</code> tokens. The definition is global and an error will result if the <math>\langle function \rangle</math> is already defined.</p>
<hr/> <code>\cs_new_protected:Npn</code> <code>\cs_new_protected:(cpn Npx cpx)</code> <hr/>	<code>\cs_new_protected:Npn &lt;function&gt; &lt;parameters&gt; {&lt;code&gt;}</code> <p>Creates <math>\langle function \rangle</math> to expand to <math>\langle code \rangle</math> as replacement text. Within the <math>\langle code \rangle</math>, the <math>\langle parameters \rangle</math> (<math>\#1</math>, <math>\#2</math>, <i>etc.</i>) will be replaced by those absorbed by the function. The <math>\langle function \rangle</math> will not expand within an x-type argument. The definition is global and an error will result if the <math>\langle function \rangle</math> is already defined.</p>
<hr/> <code>\cs_new_protected_nopar:Npn</code> <code>\cs_new_protected_nopar:(cpn Npx cpx)</code> <hr/>	<code>\cs_new_protected_nopar:Npn &lt;function&gt; &lt;parameters&gt; {&lt;code&gt;}</code> <p>Creates <math>\langle function \rangle</math> to expand to <math>\langle code \rangle</math> as replacement text. Within the <math>\langle code \rangle</math>, the <math>\langle parameters \rangle</math> (<math>\#1</math>, <math>\#2</math>, <i>etc.</i>) will be replaced by those absorbed by the function. When the <math>\langle function \rangle</math> is used the <math>\langle parameters \rangle</math> absorbed cannot contain <code>\par</code> tokens. The <math>\langle function \rangle</math> will not expand within an x-type argument. The definition is global and an error will result if the <math>\langle function \rangle</math> is already defined.</p>
<hr/> <code>\cs_set:Npn</code> <code>\cs_set:(cpn Npx cpx)</code> <hr/>	<code>\cs_set:Npn &lt;function&gt; &lt;parameters&gt; {&lt;code&gt;}</code> <p>Sets <math>\langle function \rangle</math> to expand to <math>\langle code \rangle</math> as replacement text. Within the <math>\langle code \rangle</math>, the <math>\langle parameters \rangle</math> (<math>\#1</math>, <math>\#2</math>, <i>etc.</i>) will be replaced by those absorbed by the function. The assignment of a meaning to the <math>\langle function \rangle</math> is restricted to the current TeX group level.</p>
<hr/> <code>\cs_set_nopar:Npn</code> <code>\cs_set_nopar:(cpn Npx cpx)</code> <hr/>	<code>\cs_set_nopar:Npn &lt;function&gt; &lt;parameters&gt; {&lt;code&gt;}</code> <p>Sets <math>\langle function \rangle</math> to expand to <math>\langle code \rangle</math> as replacement text. Within the <math>\langle code \rangle</math>, the <math>\langle parameters \rangle</math> (<math>\#1</math>, <math>\#2</math>, <i>etc.</i>) will be replaced by those absorbed by the function. When the <math>\langle function \rangle</math> is used the <math>\langle parameters \rangle</math> absorbed cannot contain <code>\par</code> tokens. The assignment of a meaning to the <math>\langle function \rangle</math> is restricted to the current TeX group level.</p>
<hr/> <code>\cs_set_protected:Npn</code> <code>\cs_set_protected:(cpn Npx cpx)</code> <hr/>	<code>\cs_set_protected:Npn &lt;function&gt; &lt;parameters&gt; {&lt;code&gt;}</code> <p>Sets <math>\langle function \rangle</math> to expand to <math>\langle code \rangle</math> as replacement text. Within the <math>\langle code \rangle</math>, the <math>\langle parameters \rangle</math> (<math>\#1</math>, <math>\#2</math>, <i>etc.</i>) will be replaced by those absorbed by the function. The assignment of a meaning to the <math>\langle function \rangle</math> is restricted to the current TeX group level. The <math>\langle function \rangle</math> will not expand within an x-type argument.</p>

---

<code>\cs_set_protected_nopar:Npn</code>	<code>\cs_set_protected_nopar:Npn &lt;function&gt; &lt;parameters&gt; {&lt;code&gt;}</code>
<code>\cs_set_protected_nopar:(cpn Npx cpx)</code>	

---

Sets  $\langle function \rangle$  to expand to  $\langle code \rangle$  as replacement text. Within the  $\langle code \rangle$ , the  $\langle parameters \rangle$  ( $\#1$ ,  $\#2$ , *etc.*) will be replaced by those absorbed by the function. When the  $\langle function \rangle$  is used the  $\langle parameters \rangle$  absorbed cannot contain `\par` tokens. The assignment of a meaning to the  $\langle function \rangle$  is restricted to the current  $\text{\TeX}$  group level. The  $\langle function \rangle$  will not expand within an x-type argument.

---

<code>\cs_gset:Npn</code>	<code>\cs_gset:Npn &lt;function&gt; &lt;parameters&gt; {&lt;code&gt;}</code>
<code>\cs_gset:(cpn Npx cpx)</code>	

---

Globally sets  $\langle function \rangle$  to expand to  $\langle code \rangle$  as replacement text. Within the  $\langle code \rangle$ , the  $\langle parameters \rangle$  ( $\#1$ ,  $\#2$ , *etc.*) will be replaced by those absorbed by the function. The assignment of a meaning to the  $\langle function \rangle$  is *not* restricted to the current  $\text{\TeX}$  group level: the assignment is global.

---

<code>\cs_gset_nopar:Npn</code>	<code>\cs_gset_nopar:Npn &lt;function&gt; &lt;parameters&gt; {&lt;code&gt;}</code>
<code>\cs_gset_nopar:(cpn Npx cpx)</code>	

---

Globally sets  $\langle function \rangle$  to expand to  $\langle code \rangle$  as replacement text. Within the  $\langle code \rangle$ , the  $\langle parameters \rangle$  ( $\#1$ ,  $\#2$ , *etc.*) will be replaced by those absorbed by the function. When the  $\langle function \rangle$  is used the  $\langle parameters \rangle$  absorbed cannot contain `\par` tokens. The assignment of a meaning to the  $\langle function \rangle$  is *not* restricted to the current  $\text{\TeX}$  group level: the assignment is global.

---

<code>\cs_gset_protected:Npn</code>	<code>\cs_gset_protected:Npn &lt;function&gt; &lt;parameters&gt; {&lt;code&gt;}</code>
<code>\cs_gset_protected:(cpn Npx cpx)</code>	

---

Globally sets  $\langle function \rangle$  to expand to  $\langle code \rangle$  as replacement text. Within the  $\langle code \rangle$ , the  $\langle parameters \rangle$  ( $\#1$ ,  $\#2$ , *etc.*) will be replaced by those absorbed by the function. The assignment of a meaning to the  $\langle function \rangle$  is *not* restricted to the current  $\text{\TeX}$  group level: the assignment is global. The  $\langle function \rangle$  will not expand within an x-type argument.

---

<code>\cs_gset_protected_nopar:Npn</code>	<code>\cs_gset_protected_nopar:Npn &lt;function&gt; &lt;parameters&gt; {&lt;code&gt;}</code>
<code>\cs_gset_protected_nopar:(cpn Npx cpx)</code>	

---

Globally sets  $\langle function \rangle$  to expand to  $\langle code \rangle$  as replacement text. Within the  $\langle code \rangle$ , the  $\langle parameters \rangle$  ( $\#1$ ,  $\#2$ , *etc.*) will be replaced by those absorbed by the function. When the  $\langle function \rangle$  is used the  $\langle parameters \rangle$  absorbed cannot contain `\par` tokens. The assignment of a meaning to the  $\langle function \rangle$  is *not* restricted to the current  $\text{\TeX}$  group level: the assignment is global. The  $\langle function \rangle$  will not expand within an x-type argument.

### 8.3 Defining new functions using the signature

---

<code>\cs_new:Nn</code>	<code>\cs_new:Nn &lt;function&gt; {&lt;code&gt;}</code>
<code>\cs_new:(cn Nx cx)</code>	

---

Creates  $\langle function \rangle$  to expand to  $\langle code \rangle$  as replacement text. Within the  $\langle code \rangle$ , the number of  $\langle parameters \rangle$  is detected automatically from the function signature. These  $\langle parameters \rangle$  ( $\#1$ ,  $\#2$ , *etc.*) will be replaced by those absorbed by the function. The definition is global and an error will result if the  $\langle function \rangle$  is already defined.

<hr/> <code>\cs_new_nopar:Nn</code> <code>\cs_new_nopar:(cn Nx cx)</code> <hr/>	<code>\cs_new_nopar:Nn &lt;function&gt; {&lt;code&gt;}</code> <p>Creates <math>\langle function \rangle</math> to expand to <math>\langle code \rangle</math> as replacement text. Within the <math>\langle code \rangle</math>, the number of <math>\langle parameters \rangle</math> is detected automatically from the function signature. These <math>\langle parameters \rangle</math> (<math>\#1</math>, <math>\#2</math>, etc.) will be replaced by those absorbed by the function. When the <math>\langle function \rangle</math> is used the <math>\langle parameters \rangle</math> absorbed cannot contain <code>\par</code> tokens. The definition is global and an error will result if the <math>\langle function \rangle</math> is already defined.</p>
<hr/> <code>\cs_new_protected:Nn</code> <code>\cs_new_protected:(cn Nx cx)</code> <hr/>	<code>\cs_new_protected:Nn &lt;function&gt; {&lt;code&gt;}</code> <p>Creates <math>\langle function \rangle</math> to expand to <math>\langle code \rangle</math> as replacement text. Within the <math>\langle code \rangle</math>, the number of <math>\langle parameters \rangle</math> is detected automatically from the function signature. These <math>\langle parameters \rangle</math> (<math>\#1</math>, <math>\#2</math>, etc.) will be replaced by those absorbed by the function. The <math>\langle function \rangle</math> will not expand within an x-type argument. The definition is global and an error will result if the <math>\langle function \rangle</math> is already defined.</p>
<hr/> <code>\cs_new_protected_nopar:Nn</code> <code>\cs_new_protected_nopar:(cn Nx cx)</code> <hr/>	<code>\cs_new_protected_nopar:Nn &lt;function&gt; {&lt;code&gt;}</code> <p>Creates <math>\langle function \rangle</math> to expand to <math>\langle code \rangle</math> as replacement text. Within the <math>\langle code \rangle</math>, the number of <math>\langle parameters \rangle</math> is detected automatically from the function signature. These <math>\langle parameters \rangle</math> (<math>\#1</math>, <math>\#2</math>, etc.) will be replaced by those absorbed by the function. When the <math>\langle function \rangle</math> is used the <math>\langle parameters \rangle</math> absorbed cannot contain <code>\par</code> tokens. The <math>\langle function \rangle</math> will not expand within an x-type argument. The definition is global and an error will result if the <math>\langle function \rangle</math> is already defined.</p>
<hr/> <code>\cs_set:Nn</code> <code>\cs_set:(cn Nx cx)</code> <hr/>	<code>\cs_set:Nn &lt;function&gt; {&lt;code&gt;}</code> <p>Sets <math>\langle function \rangle</math> to expand to <math>\langle code \rangle</math> as replacement text. Within the <math>\langle code \rangle</math>, the number of <math>\langle parameters \rangle</math> is detected automatically from the function signature. These <math>\langle parameters \rangle</math> (<math>\#1</math>, <math>\#2</math>, etc.) will be replaced by those absorbed by the function. The assignment of a meaning to the <math>\langle function \rangle</math> is restricted to the current <math>\text{\TeX}</math> group level.</p>
<hr/> <code>\cs_set_nopar:Nn</code> <code>\cs_set_nopar:(cn Nx cx)</code> <hr/>	<code>\cs_set_nopar:Nn &lt;function&gt; {&lt;code&gt;}</code> <p>Sets <math>\langle function \rangle</math> to expand to <math>\langle code \rangle</math> as replacement text. Within the <math>\langle code \rangle</math>, the number of <math>\langle parameters \rangle</math> is detected automatically from the function signature. These <math>\langle parameters \rangle</math> (<math>\#1</math>, <math>\#2</math>, etc.) will be replaced by those absorbed by the function. When the <math>\langle function \rangle</math> is used the <math>\langle parameters \rangle</math> absorbed cannot contain <code>\par</code> tokens. The assignment of a meaning to the <math>\langle function \rangle</math> is restricted to the current <math>\text{\TeX}</math> group level.</p>
<hr/> <code>\cs_set_protected:Nn</code> <code>\cs_set_protected:(cn Nx cx)</code> <hr/>	<code>\cs_set_protected:Nn &lt;function&gt; {&lt;code&gt;}</code> <p>Sets <math>\langle function \rangle</math> to expand to <math>\langle code \rangle</math> as replacement text. Within the <math>\langle code \rangle</math>, the number of <math>\langle parameters \rangle</math> is detected automatically from the function signature. These <math>\langle parameters \rangle</math> (<math>\#1</math>, <math>\#2</math>, etc.) will be replaced by those absorbed by the function. The <math>\langle function \rangle</math> will not expand within an x-type argument. The assignment of a meaning to the <math>\langle function \rangle</math> is restricted to the current <math>\text{\TeX}</math> group level.</p>



---

<code>\cs_set_protected_nopar:Nn</code>	<code>\cs_set_protected_nopar:Nn &lt;function&gt; {&lt;code&gt;}</code>
<code>\cs_set_protected_nopar:(cn Nx cx)</code>	

---

Sets  $\langle function \rangle$  to expand to  $\langle code \rangle$  as replacement text. Within the  $\langle code \rangle$ , the number of  $\langle parameters \rangle$  is detected automatically from the function signature. These  $\langle parameters \rangle$  (#1, #2, etc.) will be replaced by those absorbed by the function. When the  $\langle function \rangle$  is used the  $\langle parameters \rangle$  absorbed cannot contain `\par` tokens. The  $\langle function \rangle$  will not expand within an x-type argument. The assignment of a meaning to the  $\langle function \rangle$  is restricted to the current T<sub>E</sub>X group level.

---

<code>\cs_gset:Nn</code>	<code>\cs_gset:Nn &lt;function&gt; {&lt;code&gt;}</code>
<code>\cs_gset:(cn Nx cx)</code>	

---

Sets  $\langle function \rangle$  to expand to  $\langle code \rangle$  as replacement text. Within the  $\langle code \rangle$ , the number of  $\langle parameters \rangle$  is detected automatically from the function signature. These  $\langle parameters \rangle$  (#1, #2, etc.) will be replaced by those absorbed by the function. The assignment of a meaning to the  $\langle function \rangle$  is global.

---

<code>\cs_gset_nopar:Nn</code>	<code>\cs_gset_nopar:Nn &lt;function&gt; {&lt;code&gt;}</code>
<code>\cs_gset_nopar:(cn Nx cx)</code>	

---

Sets  $\langle function \rangle$  to expand to  $\langle code \rangle$  as replacement text. Within the  $\langle code \rangle$ , the number of  $\langle parameters \rangle$  is detected automatically from the function signature. These  $\langle parameters \rangle$  (#1, #2, etc.) will be replaced by those absorbed by the function. When the  $\langle function \rangle$  is used the  $\langle parameters \rangle$  absorbed cannot contain `\par` tokens. The assignment of a meaning to the  $\langle function \rangle$  is global.

---

<code>\cs_gset_protected:Nn</code>	<code>\cs_gset_protected:Nn &lt;function&gt; {&lt;code&gt;}</code>
<code>\cs_gset_protected:(cn Nx cx)</code>	

---

Sets  $\langle function \rangle$  to expand to  $\langle code \rangle$  as replacement text. Within the  $\langle code \rangle$ , the number of  $\langle parameters \rangle$  is detected automatically from the function signature. These  $\langle parameters \rangle$  (#1, #2, etc.) will be replaced by those absorbed by the function. The  $\langle function \rangle$  will not expand within an x-type argument. The assignment of a meaning to the  $\langle function \rangle$  is global.

---

<code>\cs_gset_protected_nopar:Nn</code>	<code>\cs_gset_protected_nopar:Nn &lt;function&gt; {&lt;code&gt;}</code>
<code>\cs_gset_protected_nopar:(cn Nx cx)</code>	

---

Sets  $\langle function \rangle$  to expand to  $\langle code \rangle$  as replacement text. Within the  $\langle code \rangle$ , the number of  $\langle parameters \rangle$  is detected automatically from the function signature. These  $\langle parameters \rangle$  (#1, #2, etc.) will be replaced by those absorbed by the function. When the  $\langle function \rangle$  is used the  $\langle parameters \rangle$  absorbed cannot contain `\par` tokens. The  $\langle function \rangle$  will not expand within an x-type argument. The assignment of a meaning to the  $\langle function \rangle$  is global.

<code>\cs_generate_from_arg_count:NNnn</code>	<code>\cs_generate_from_arg_count:NNnn</code> $\langle function \rangle$ $\langle creator \rangle$ $\langle number \rangle$
<code>\cs_generate_from_arg_count:(cNnn Ncnn)</code>	$\langle code \rangle$

Updated: 2012-01-14

Uses the  $\langle creator \rangle$  function (which should have signature `Npn`, for example `\cs_new:Npn`) to define a  $\langle function \rangle$  which takes  $\langle number \rangle$  arguments and has  $\langle code \rangle$  as replacement text. The  $\langle number \rangle$  of arguments is an integer expression, evaluated as detailed for `\int_eval:n`.

## 8.4 Copying control sequences

Control sequences (not just functions as defined above) can be set to have the same meaning using the functions described here. Making two control sequences equivalent means that the second control sequence is a *copy* of the first (rather than a pointer to it). Thus the old and new control sequence are not tied together: changes to one are not reflected in the other.

In the following text “cs” is used as an abbreviation for “control sequence”.

<code>\cs_new_eq:NN</code>	<code>\cs_new_eq:NN</code> $\langle cs\ 1 \rangle$ $\langle cs\ 2 \rangle$
<code>\cs_new_eq:(Nc cN cc)</code>	<code>\cs_new_eq:NN</code> $\langle cs\ 1 \rangle$ $\langle token \rangle$

Globally creates  $\langle control\ sequence\ 1 \rangle$  and sets it to have the same meaning as  $\langle control\ sequence\ 2 \rangle$  or  $\langle token \rangle$ . The second control sequence may subsequently be altered without affecting the copy.

<code>\cs_set_eq:NN</code>	<code>\cs_set_eq:NN</code> $\langle cs\ 1 \rangle$ $\langle cs\ 2 \rangle$
<code>\cs_set_eq:(Nc cN cc)</code>	<code>\cs_set_eq:NN</code> $\langle cs\ 1 \rangle$ $\langle token \rangle$

Sets  $\langle control\ sequence\ 1 \rangle$  to have the same meaning as  $\langle control\ sequence\ 2 \rangle$  (or  $\langle token \rangle$ ). The second control sequence may subsequently be altered without affecting the copy. The assignment of a meaning to the  $\langle control\ sequence\ 1 \rangle$  is restricted to the current  $\text{\TeX}$  group level.

<code>\cs_gset_eq:NN</code>	<code>\cs_gset_eq:NN</code> $\langle cs\ 1 \rangle$ $\langle cs\ 2 \rangle$
<code>\cs_gset_eq:(Nc cN cc)</code>	<code>\cs_gset_eq:NN</code> $\langle cs\ 1 \rangle$ $\langle token \rangle$

Globally sets  $\langle control\ sequence\ 1 \rangle$  to have the same meaning as  $\langle control\ sequence\ 2 \rangle$  (or  $\langle token \rangle$ ). The second control sequence may subsequently be altered without affecting the copy. The assignment of a meaning to the  $\langle control\ sequence\ 1 \rangle$  is *not* restricted to the current  $\text{\TeX}$  group level: the assignment is global.

## 8.5 Deleting control sequences

There are occasions where control sequences need to be deleted. This is handled in a very simple manner.

<code>\cs_undefine:N</code>	<code>\cs_undefine:N</code> $\langle control\ sequence \rangle$
<code>\cs_undefine:c</code>	

Sets  $\langle control\ sequence \rangle$  to be globally undefined.

Updated: 2011-09-15

## 8.6 Showing control sequences

---

<code>\cs_meaning:N</code> ★	<code>\cs_meaning:N</code> $\langle$ <i>control sequence</i> $\rangle$
<code>\cs_meaning:c</code> ★	This function expands to the <i>meaning</i> of the $\langle$ <i>control sequence</i> $\rangle$ control sequence. This will show the $\langle$ <i>replacement text</i> $\rangle$ for a macro.
Updated: 2011-12-22	

---

**T<sub>E</sub>Xhackers note:** This is T<sub>E</sub>X's `\meaning` primitive. The `c` variant correctly reports undefined arguments.

---

<code>\cs_show:N</code>	<code>\cs_show:N</code> $\langle$ <i>control sequence</i> $\rangle$
<code>\cs_show:c</code>	Displays the definition of the $\langle$ <i>control sequence</i> $\rangle$ on the terminal.
Updated: 2011-12-22	

---

**T<sub>E</sub>Xhackers note:** This is the T<sub>E</sub>X primitive `\show`.

## 8.7 Converting to and from control sequences

---

<code>\use:c</code> ★	<code>\use:c</code> $\{\langle$ <i>control sequence name</i> $\rangle\}$
Converts the given $\langle$ <i>control sequence name</i> $\rangle$ into a single control sequence token. This process requires two expansions. The content for $\langle$ <i>control sequence name</i> $\rangle$ may be literal material or from other expandable functions. The $\langle$ <i>control sequence name</i> $\rangle$ must, when fully expanded, consist of character tokens which are not active: typically, they will be of category code 10 (space), 11 (letter) or 12 (other), or a mixture of these.	

As an example of the `\use:c` function, both

`\use:c { a b c }`

and

`\tl_new:N \l_my_tl`  
`\tl_set:Nn \l_my_tl { a b c }`  
`\use:c { \tl_use:N \l_my_tl }`

would be equivalent to

`\abc`

after two expansions of `\use:c`.

---

<code>\cs:w</code> ★	<code>\cs:w</code> $\langle$ <i>control sequence name</i> $\rangle$ <code>\cs_end:</code>
<code>\cs_end</code> ★	Converts the given $\langle$ <i>control sequence name</i> $\rangle$ into a single control sequence token. This process requires one expansion. The content for $\langle$ <i>control sequence name</i> $\rangle$ may be literal material or from other expandable functions. The $\langle$ <i>control sequence name</i> $\rangle$ must, when fully expanded, consist of character tokens which are not active: typically, they will be of category code 10 (space), 11 (letter) or 12 (other), or a mixture of these.

---

**T<sub>E</sub>Xhackers note:** These are the T<sub>E</sub>X primitives `\csname` and `\endcsname`.

As an example of the `\cs:w` and `\cs_end:` functions, both

```
\cs:w a b c \cs_end:
```

and

```
\tl_new:N \l_my_tl
\tl_set:Nn \l_my_tl { a b c }
\cs:w \tl_use:N \l_my_tl \cs_end:
```

would be equivalent to

```
\abc
```

after one expansion of `\cs:w`.

---

```
\cs_to_str:N ★ \cs_to_str:N {\control sequence}
```

---

Converts the given *<control sequence>* into a series of characters with category code 12 (other), except spaces, of category code 10. The sequence will *not* include the current escape token, *cf.* `\token_to_str:N`. Full expansion of this function requires exactly 2 expansion steps, and so an *x*-type expansion, or two *o*-type expansions will be required to convert the *<control sequence>* to a sequence of characters in the input stream. In most cases, an *f*-expansion will be correct as well, but this loses a space at the start of the result.

## 9 Using or removing tokens and arguments

Tokens in the input can be read and used or read and discarded. If one or more tokens are wrapped in braces then in absorbing them the outer set will be removed. At the same time, the category code of each token is set when the token is read by a function (if it is read more than once, the category code is determined by the the situation in force when first function absorbs the token).

---

```
\use:n ★ \use:n {\group_1}
\use:(nn|nnn|nnnn) ★ \use:nn {\group_1} {\group_2}
\use:nnn {\group_1} {\group_2} {\group_3}
\use:nnnn {\group_1} {\group_2} {\group_3} {\group_4}
```

---

As illustrated, these functions will absorb between one and four arguments, as indicated by the argument specifier. The braces surrounding each argument will be removed leaving the remaining tokens in the input stream. The category code of these tokens will also be fixed by this process (if it has not already been by some other absorption). All of these functions require only a single expansion to operate, so that one expansion of

```
\use:nn { abc } { { def } }
```

will result in the input stream containing

```
abc { def }
```

*i.e.* only the outer braces will be removed.

---

<code>\use_i:nn</code>	★	<code>\use_i:nn {\langle arg_1 \rangle} {\langle arg_2 \rangle}</code>
------------------------	---	--

---

<code>\use_ii:nn</code>	★	These functions absorb two arguments from the input stream. The function <code>\use_i:nn</code> discards the second argument, and leaves the content of the first argument in the input stream. <code>\use_ii:nn</code> discards the first argument and leaves the content of the second argument in the input stream. The category code of these tokens will also be fixed (if it has not already been by some other absorption). A single expansion is needed for the functions to take effect.
-------------------------	---	---

---

<code>\use_i:nnn</code>	★	<code>\use_i:nnn {\langle arg_1 \rangle} {\langle arg_2 \rangle} {\langle arg_3 \rangle}</code>
-------------------------	---	---

---

<code>\use_ii:nnn</code>	★	These functions absorb three arguments from the input stream. The function <code>\use_i:nnn</code> discards the second and third arguments, and leaves the content of the first argument in the input stream. <code>\use_ii:nnn</code> and <code>\use_iii:nnn</code> work similarly, leaving the content of second or third arguments in the input stream, respectively. The category code of these tokens will also be fixed (if it has not already been by some other absorption). A single expansion is needed for the functions to take effect.
<code>\use_iii:nnn</code>	★	

---

<code>\use_i:nnnn</code>	★	<code>\use_i:nnnn {\langle arg_1 \rangle} {\langle arg_2 \rangle} {\langle arg_3 \rangle} {\langle arg_4 \rangle}</code>
--------------------------	---	--

---

<code>\use_ii:nnnn</code>	★	These functions absorb four arguments from the input stream. The function <code>\use_i:nnnn</code> discards the second, third and fourth arguments, and leaves the content of the first argument in the input stream. <code>\use_ii:nnnn</code> , <code>\use_iii:nnnn</code> and <code>\use_iv:nnnn</code> work similarly, leaving the content of second, third or fourth arguments in the input stream, respectively. The category code of these tokens will also be fixed (if it has not already been by some other absorption). A single expansion is needed for the functions to take effect.
<code>\use_iii:nnnn</code>	★	
<code>\use_iv:nnnn</code>	★	

---

<code>\use_i_ii:nnn</code>	★	<code>\use_i_ii:nnn {\langle arg_1 \rangle} {\langle arg_2 \rangle} {\langle arg_3 \rangle}</code>
----------------------------	---	--

---

This functions will absorb three arguments and leave the content of the first and second in the input stream. The category code of these tokens will also be fixed (if it has not already been by some other absorption). A single expansion is needed for the functions to take effect. An example:

`\use_i_ii:nnn { abc } { { def } } { ghi }`

will result in the input stream containing

`abc { def }`

*i.e.* the outer braces will be removed and the third group will be removed.

---

<code>\use_none:n</code>	★	<code>\use_none:n {\langle group_1 \rangle}</code>
--------------------------	---	--

---

<code>\use_none:(nn nnn nnnn nnnnn nnnnnn nnnnnnn nnnnnnnn nnnnnnnnn)</code>	★	
--	---	--

---

These functions absorb between one and nine groups from the input stream, leaving nothing on the resulting input stream. These functions work after a single expansion. One or more of the `n` arguments may be an unbraced single token (*i.e.* an `N` argument).

---

<code>\use:x</code>	<code>\use:x {(expandable tokens)}</code>
---------------------	---

---

Updated: 2011-12-31	Fully expands the $\langle expandable tokens \rangle$ and inserts the result into the input stream at the current location. Any hash characters (#) in the argument must be doubled.
---------------------	--

---

## 9.1 Selecting tokens from delimited arguments

A different kind of function for selecting tokens from the token stream are those that use delimited arguments.

---

<code>\use_none_delimit_by_q_nil:w</code>	★	<code>\use_none_delimit_by_q_nil:w &lt;balanced text&gt; \q_nil</code>
<code>\use_none_delimit_by_q_stop:w</code>	★	<code>\use_none_delimit_by_q_stop:w &lt;balanced text&gt; \q_stop</code>
<code>\use_none_delimit_by_q_recursion_stop:w</code>	★	<code>\use_none_delimit_by_q_recursion_stop:w &lt;balanced text&gt; \q_recursion_stop</code>

---

Absorb the  $\langle balanced text \rangle$  from the input stream delimited by the marker given in the function name, leaving nothing in the input stream.

---

<code>\use_i_delimit_by_q_nil:nw</code>	★	<code>\use_i_delimit_by_q_nil:nw {(inserted tokens)} &lt;balanced text&gt;</code>
<code>\use_i_delimit_by_q_stop:nw</code>	★	<code>\q_nil</code>
<code>\use_i_delimit_by_q_recursion_stop:nw</code>	★	<code>\use_i_delimit_by_q_stop:nw {(inserted tokens)} &lt;balanced text&gt; \q_stop</code>
		<code>\use_i_delimit_by_q_recursion_stop:nw {(inserted tokens)} &lt;balanced text&gt; \q_recursion_stop</code>

---

Absorb the  $\langle balanced text \rangle$  from the input stream delimited by the marker given in the function name, leaving  $\langle inserted tokens \rangle$  in the input stream for further processing.

## 9.2 Decomposing control sequences

---

<code>\cs_get_arg_count_from_signature:N</code>	★	<code>\cs_get_arg_count_from_signature:N &lt;function&gt;</code>
---	---	--

---

Splits the  $\langle function \rangle$  into the  $\langle name \rangle$  (i.e. the part before the colon) and the  $\langle signature \rangle$  (i.e. after the colon). The  $\langle number \rangle$  of tokens in the  $\langle signature \rangle$  is then left in the input stream. If there was no  $\langle signature \rangle$  then the result is the marker value  $-1$ .

---

<code>\cs_get_function_name:N</code>	★	<code>\cs_get_function_name:N &lt;function&gt;</code>
--------------------------------------	---	---

---

Splits the  $\langle function \rangle$  into the  $\langle name \rangle$  (i.e. the part before the colon) and the  $\langle signature \rangle$  (i.e. after the colon). The  $\langle name \rangle$  is then left in the input stream without the escape character present made up of tokens with category code 12 (other).

---

<code>\cs_get_function_signature:N</code>	★	<code>\cs_get_function_signature:N &lt;function&gt;</code>
---	---	--

---

Splits the  $\langle function \rangle$  into the  $\langle name \rangle$  (i.e. the part before the colon) and the  $\langle signature \rangle$  (i.e. after the colon). The  $\langle signature \rangle$  is then left in the input stream made up of tokens with category code 12 (other).

---

`\cs_split_function:NN` ★ `\cs_split_function:NN`  $\langle function \rangle$   $\langle processor \rangle$

---

Splits the  $\langle function \rangle$  into the  $\langle name \rangle$  (*i.e.* the part before the colon) and the  $\langle signature \rangle$  (*i.e.* after the colon). This information is then placed in the input stream after the  $\langle processor \rangle$  function in three parts: the  $\langle name \rangle$ , the  $\langle signature \rangle$  and a logic token indicating if a colon was found (to differentiate variables from function names). The  $\langle name \rangle$  will not include the escape character, and both the  $\langle name \rangle$  and  $\langle signature \rangle$  are made up of tokens with category code 12 (other). The  $\langle processor \rangle$  should be a function with argument specification `:nnN` (plus any trailing arguments needed).

## 10 Predicates and conditionals

L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X3 has three concepts for conditional flow processing:

**Branching conditionals** Functions that carry out a test and then execute, depending on its result, either the code supplied as the  $\langle true\ code \rangle$  or the  $\langle false\ code \rangle$ . These arguments are denoted with T and F, respectively. An example would be

`\cs_if_free:cTF {abc} {\langle true\ code \rangle} {\langle false\ code \rangle}`

a function that will turn the first argument into a control sequence (since it's marked as c) then checks whether this control sequence is still free and then depending on the result carry out the code in the second argument (true case) or in the third argument (false case).

These type of functions are known as “conditionals”; whenever a TF function is defined it will usually be accompanied by T and F functions as well. These are provided for convenience when the branch only needs to go a single way. Package writers are free to choose which types to define but the kernel definitions will always provide all three versions.

Important to note is that these branching conditionals with  $\langle true\ code \rangle$  and/or  $\langle false\ code \rangle$  are always defined in a way that the code of the chosen alternative can operate on following tokens in the input stream.

These conditional functions may or may not be fully expandable, but if they are expandable they will be accompanied by a “predicate” for the same test as described below.

**Predicates** “Predicates” are functions that return a special type of boolean value which can be tested by the boolean expression parser. All functions of this type are expandable and have names that end with `_p` in the description part. For example,

`\cs_if_free_p:N`

would be a predicate function for the same type of test as the conditional described above. It would return “true” if its argument (a single token denoted by N) is still free for definition. It would be used in constructions like

```

\bool_if:nTF {
  \cs_if_free_p:N \l_tmpz_tl || \cs_if_free_p:N \g_tmpz_tl
} {\true code} {\false code}

```

For each predicate defined, a “branching conditional” will also exist that behaves like a conditional described above.

**Primitive conditionals** There is a third variety of conditional, which is the original concept used in plain  $\text{\TeX}$  and  $\text{\LaTeX 2}\epsilon$ . Their use is discouraged in `expl3` (although still used in low-level definitions) because they are more fragile and in many cases require more expansion control (hence more code) than the two types of conditionals described above.

---

```

\c_true_bool
\c_false_bool

```

---

Constants that represent `true` and `false`, respectively. Used to implement predicates.

## 10.1 Tests on control sequences

---

```

\cs_if_eq_p:NN * \cs_if_eq_p:NN {\cs_1} {\cs_2}
\cs_if_eq:NNTF * \cs_if_eq:NNTF {\cs_1} {\cs_2} {\true code} {\false code}

```

---

Compares the definition of two *control sequences* and is logically `true` the same, *i.e.* if they have exactly the same definition when examined with `\cs_show:N`.

---

```

\cs_if_exist_p:N * \cs_if_exist_p:N <control sequence>
\cs_if_exist_p:c * \cs_if_exist:NNTF <control sequence> {\true code} {\false code}
\cs_if_exist:NNTF *
\cs_if_exist:cTF *

```

---

Tests whether the *control sequence* is currently defined (whether as a function or another control sequence type). Any valid definition of *control sequence* will evaluate as `true`.

---

```

\cs_if_free_p:N * \cs_if_free_p:N <control sequence>
\cs_if_free_p:c * \cs_if_free:NNTF <control sequence> {\true code} {\false code}
\cs_if_free:NNTF *
\cs_if_free:cTF *

```

---

Tests whether the *control sequence* is currently free to be defined. This test will be `false` if the *control sequence* currently exists (as defined by `\cs_if_exist:N`).



## 10.2 Testing string equality

---

<code>\str_if_eq_p:nn</code>	★	<code>\str_if_eq_p:nn {&lt;tl<sub>1</sub>&gt;} {&lt;tl<sub>2</sub>&gt;}</code>
<code>\str_if_eq_p:(Vn on no nV VV xx)</code>	★	<code>\str_if_eq:nnTF {&lt;tl<sub>1</sub>&gt;} {&lt;tl<sub>2</sub>&gt;} {&lt;true code&gt;} {&lt;false code&gt;}</code>
<code>\str_if_eq:nnTF</code>	★	
<code>\str_if_eq:(Vn on no nV VV xx)TF</code>	★	

---

Compares the two *<token lists>* on a character by character basis, and is **true** if the two lists contain the same characters in the same order. Thus for example

`\str_if_eq_p:xx { abc } { \tl_to_str:n { abc } }`

is logically **true**. All versions of these functions are fully expandable (including those involving an **x**-type expansion).

## 10.3 Engine-specific conditionals

---

<code>\luatex_if_engine_p:</code>	★	<code>\luatex_if_luatex:TF {&lt;true code&gt;} {&lt;false code&gt;}</code>
<code>\luatex_if_engineTF</code>	★	

---

Updated: 2011-09-06

---

<code>\pdftex_if_engine_p:</code>	★	<code>\pdftex_if_engine:TF {&lt;true code&gt;} {&lt;false code&gt;}</code>
<code>\pdftex_if_engineTF</code>	★	

---

Updated: 2011-09-06

---

<code>\xetex_if_engine_p:</code>	★	<code>\xetex_if_engine:TF {&lt;true code&gt;} {&lt;false code&gt;}</code>
<code>\xetex_if_engineTF</code>	★	

---

Updated: 2011-09-06

## 10.4 Primitive conditionals

The  $\varepsilon$ -TeX engine itself provides many different conditionals. Some expand whatever comes after them and others don't. Hence the names for these underlying functions will often contain a **:w** part but higher level functions are often available. See for instance `\int_compare_p:nNn` which is a wrapper for `\if_num:w`.

Certain conditionals deal with specific data types like boxes and fonts and are described there. The ones described below are either the universal conditionals or deal with control sequences. We will prefix primitive conditionals with `\if_`.

---

<code>\if_true</code>	★	<code>\if_true: &lt;true code&gt; \else: &lt;false code&gt; \fi:</code>
<code>\if_false</code>	★	<code>\if_false: &lt;true code&gt; \else: &lt;false code&gt; \fi:</code>
<code>\or</code>	★	<code>\reverse_if:N &lt;primitive conditional&gt;</code>
<code>\else</code>	★	<code>\if_true:</code> always executes <i>&lt;true code&gt;</i> , while <code>\if_false:</code> always executes <i>&lt;false code&gt;</i> .
<code>\fi</code>	★	<code>\reverse_if:N</code> reverses any two-way primitive conditional. <code>\else:</code> and <code>\fi:</code> delimit
<code>\reverse_if:N</code>	★	the branches of the conditional. <code>\or:</code> is used in case switches, see <code>l3int</code> for more.

---

**T<sub>E</sub>Xhackers note:** These are equivalent to their corresponding T<sub>E</sub>X primitive conditionals; `\reverse_if:N` is  $\varepsilon$ -T<sub>E</sub>X's `\unless`.

---

<code>\if_meaning:w</code>	★	<code>\if_meaning:w &lt;arg<sub>12</sub></code>
----------------------------	---	---

---

`\if_meaning:w` executes *<true code>* when *<arg<sub>1 and *<arg<sub>2 are the same, otherwise it executes *<false code>*. *<arg<sub>1 and *<arg<sub>2 could be functions, variables, tokens; in all cases the *unexpanded* definitions are compared.</sub>*</sub>*</sub>*</sub>*

**T<sub>E</sub>Xhackers note:** This is T<sub>E</sub>X's `\ifx`.

---

<code>\if:w</code>	★	<code>\if:w &lt;token<sub>12</sub></code>
<code>\if_catcode:w</code>	★	<code>\if_catcode:w &lt;token<sub>12</sub></code>
<code>\if_catcode:w</code>	★	These conditionals will expand any following tokens until two unexpandable tokens are left. If you wish to prevent this expansion, prefix the token in question with <code>\exp_not:N</code> . <code>\if_catcode:w</code> tests if the category codes of the two tokens are the same whereas <code>\if:w</code> tests if the character codes are identical. <code>\if_charcode:w</code> is an alternative name for <code>\if:w</code> .

---



---

<code>\if_cs_exist:N</code>	★	<code>\if_cs_exist:N &lt;cs&gt; &lt;true code&gt; \else: &lt;false code&gt; \fi:</code>
<code>\if_cs_exist:w</code>	★	<code>\if_cs_exist:w &lt;tokens&gt; \cs_end: &lt;true code&gt; \else: &lt;false code&gt; \fi:</code>

---

Check if *<cs>* appears in the hash table or if the control sequence that can be formed from *<tokens>* appears in the hash table. The latter function does not turn the control sequence in question into `\scan_stop:!` This can be useful when dealing with control sequences which cannot be entered as a single token.

---

<code>\if_mode_horizontal</code>	★	<code>\if_mode_horizontal: &lt;true code&gt; \else: &lt;false code&gt; \fi:</code>
<code>\if_mode_vertical</code>	★	Execute <i>&lt;true code&gt;</i> if currently in horizontal mode, otherwise execute <i>&lt;false code&gt;</i> . Similar for the other functions.
<code>\if_mode_math</code>	★	
<code>\if_mode_inner</code>	★	

---

## 11 Internal kernel functions

---

<code>\chk_if_exist_cs:N</code>	<code>\chk_if_exist_cs:N &lt;cs&gt;</code>
<code>\chk_if_exist_cs:c</code>	This function checks that <i>&lt;cs&gt;</i> exists according to the criteria for <code>\cs_if_exist_p:N</code> , and if not raises a kernel-level error.

---

---

```
\chk_if_free_cs:N
\chk_if_free_cs:c
```

---

```
\chk_if_free_cs:N <cs>
```

This function checks that  $\langle cs \rangle$  is free according to the criteria for  $\backslash cs\_if\_free\_p:N$ , and if not raises a kernel-level error.

## 12 Experimental functions

---

```
\cs_if_exist_use:NTF ★
\cs_if_exist_use:cTF ★
```

---

New: 2011-10-10

```
\cs_if_exist_use:NTF <control sequence> {<true code>} {<false code>}
```

If the  $\langle control\ sequence \rangle$  exists, leave it in the input stream, followed by the  $\langle true\ code \rangle$  (unbraced). Otherwise, leave the  $\langle false \rangle$  code in the input stream. For example,

```
\cs_set:Npn \mypkg_use_character:N #1
{ \cs_if_exist_use:cF { mypkg_#1:n } { \mypkg_default:N #1 } }
```

calls the function  $\backslash mypkg\_#1:n$  if it exists, and falls back to a default action otherwise. This could also be done (more slowly) using  $\backslash prg\_case\_str:xxn$ .

**T<sub>E</sub>Xhackers note:** The  $c$  variants do not introduce the  $\langle control\ sequence \rangle$  in the hash table if it is not there.

## Part V

# The l3expan package

## Argument expansion

This module provides generic methods for expanding  $\TeX$  arguments in a systematic manner. The functions in this module all have prefix `exp`.

Not all possible variations are implemented for every base function. Instead only those that are used within the  $\LaTeX$ 3 kernel or otherwise seem to be of general interest are implemented. Consult the module description to find out which functions are actually defined. The next section explains how to define missing variants.

## 13 Defining new variants

The definition of variant forms for base functions may be necessary when writing new functions or when applying a kernel function in a situation that we haven't thought of before.

Internally preprocessing of arguments is done with functions from the `\exp_` module. They all look alike, an example would be `\exp_args:NNo`. This function has three arguments, the first and the second are a single tokens, while the third argument should be given in braces. Applying `\exp_args:NNo` will expand the content of third argument once before any expansion of the first and second arguments. If `\seq_gpush:No` was not define it could be coded in the following way:

```
\exp_args:NNo \seq_gpush:Nn
  \g_file_name_stack
  \l_tmpa_tl
```

In other words, the first argument to `\exp_args:NNo` is the base function and the other arguments are preprocessed and then passed to this base function. In the example the first argument to the base function should be a single token which is left unchanged while the second argument is expanded once. From this example we can also see how the variants are defined. They just expand into the appropriate `\exp_` function followed by the desired base function, *e.g.*

```
\cs_new_nopar:Npn\seq_gpush:No{\exp_args:NNo\seq_gpush:Nn}
```

Providing variants in this way in style files is uncritical as the `\cs_new_nopar:Npn` function will silently accept definitions whenever the new definition is identical to an already given one. Therefore adding such definition to later releases of the kernel will not make such style files obsolete.

The steps above may be automated by using the function `\cs_generate_variant:Nn`, described next.

## 14 Methods for defining variants

---

`\cs_generate_variant:Nn`

---

Updated: 2011-09-15

---

`\cs_generate_variant:Nn`  $\langle parent\ control\ sequence \rangle$   $\{ \langle variant\ argument\ specifiers \rangle \}$

This function is used to define argument-specifier variants of the  $\langle parent\ control\ sequence \rangle$  for L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X3 code-level macros. The  $\langle parent\ control\ sequence \rangle$  is first separated into the  $\langle base\ name \rangle$  and  $\langle original\ argument\ specifier \rangle$ . The comma-separated list of  $\langle variant\ argument\ specifiers \rangle$  is then used to define variants of the  $\langle original\ argument\ specifier \rangle$  where these are not already defined. For each  $\langle variant \rangle$  given, a function is created which will expand its arguments as detailed and pass them to the  $\langle parent\ control\ sequence \rangle$ . So for example

```
\cs_set:Npn \foo:Nn #1#2 { code here }
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \foo:Nn { c }
```

will create a new function `\foo:cn` which will expand its first argument into a control sequence name and pass the result to `\foo:Nn`. Similarly

```
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \foo:Nn { NV , cV }
```

would generate the functions `\foo:NV` and `\foo:cV` in the same way. The `\cs_generate_variant:Nn` function can only be applied if the  $\langle parent\ control\ sequence \rangle$  is already defined. If the  $\langle parent\ control\ sequence \rangle$  is protected then the new sequence will also be protected. The  $\langle variant \rangle$  is created globally, as is any `\exp_args:N` $\langle variant \rangle$  function needed to carry out the expansion.

## 15 Introducing the variants

The available internal functions for argument expansion come in two flavours, some of them are faster than others. Therefore it is usually best to follow the following guidelines when defining new functions that are supposed to come with variant forms:

- Arguments that might need expansion should come first in the list of arguments to make processing faster.
- Arguments that should consist of single tokens should come first.
- Arguments that need full expansion (*i.e.*, are denoted with `x`) should be avoided if possible as they can not be processed expandably, *i.e.*, functions of this type will not work correctly in arguments that are itself subject to `x` expansion.
- In general, unless in the last position, multi-token arguments `n`, `f`, and `o` will need special processing which is not fast. Therefore it is best to use the optimized functions, namely those that contain only `N`, `c`, `V`, and `v`, and, in the last position, `o`, `f`, with possible trailing `N` or `n`, which are not expanded.

The `V` type returns the value of a register, which can be one of `tl`, `num`, `int`, `skip`, `dim`, `toks`, or built-in T<sub>E</sub>X registers. The `v` type is the same except it first creates a

control sequence out of its argument before returning the value. This recent addition to the argument specifiers may shake things up a bit as most places where `o` is used will be replaced by `V`. The documentation you are currently reading will therefore require a fair bit of re-writing.

In general, the programmer should not need to be concerned with expansion control. When simply using the content of a variable, functions with a `V` specifier should be used. For those referred to by `(cs)name`, the `v` specifier is available for the same purpose. Only when specific expansion steps are needed, such as when using delimited arguments, should the lower-level functions with `o` specifiers be employed.

The `f` type is so special that it deserves an example. Let's pretend we want to set `\aaa` equal to the control sequence stemming from turning `b \l_tmpa_tl b` into a control sequence. Furthermore we want to store the execution of it in a *tl var*. In this example we assume `\l_tmpa_tl` contains the text string `lur`. The straightforward approach is

```
\tl_set:Nc \l_tmpb_tl {\cs_set_eq:Nc \aaa { b \l_tmpa_tl b } }
```

Unfortunately this only puts `\exp_args:Nnc \cs_set_eq:NN \aaa {b \l_tmpa_tl b}` into `\l_tmpb_tl` and not `\cs_set_eq:NN \aaa = \blurb` as we probably wanted. Using `\tl_set:Nx` is not an option as that will die horribly. Instead we can do a

```
\tl_set:Nf \l_tmpb_tl {\cs_set_eq:Nc \aaa { b \l_tmpa_tl b } }
```

which puts the desired result in `\l_tmpb_tl`. It requires `\toks_set:Nf` to be defined as

```
\cs_set_nopar:Npn \tl_set:Nf { \exp_args:Nnf \tl_set:Nn }
```

If you use this type of expansion in conditional processing then you should stick to using TF type functions only as it does not try to finish any `\if... \fi`: itself!

## 16 Manipulating the first argument

These functions are described in detail: expansion of multiple tokens follows the same rules but is described in a shorter fashion.

---

```
\exp_args:No ★ \exp_args:No <function> {\tokens} ...
```

---

This function absorbs two arguments (the *<function>* name and the *<tokens>*). The *<tokens>* are expanded once, and the result is inserted in braces into the input stream *after* reinsertion of the *<function>*. Thus the *<function>* may take more than one argument: all others will be left unchanged.

---

```
\exp_args:Nc ★ \exp_args:Nc <function> {\tokens}
\exp_args:cc ★
```

---

This function absorbs two arguments (the *<function>* name and the *<tokens>*). The *<tokens>* are expanded until only characters remain, and are then turned into a control sequence. (An internal error will occur if such a conversion is not possible). The result is inserted into the input stream *after* reinsertion of the *<function>*. Thus the *<function>* may take more than one argument: all others will be left unchanged.

The `:cc` variant constructs the *<function>* name in the same manner as described for the *<tokens>*.

<hr/> <hr/>	<hr/> <hr/>
<code>\exp_args:NV</code> ★	<code>\exp_args:NV</code> $\langle function \rangle$ $\langle variable \rangle$
	This function absorbs two arguments (the names of the $\langle function \rangle$ and the $\langle variable \rangle$ ). The content of the $\langle variable \rangle$ are recovered and placed inside braces into the input stream <i>after</i> reinsertion of the $\langle function \rangle$ . Thus the $\langle function \rangle$ may take more than one argument: all others will be left unchanged.
<hr/> <hr/>	<hr/> <hr/>
<code>\exp_args:Nv</code> ★	<code>\exp_args:Nv</code> $\langle function \rangle$ $\{\langle tokens \rangle\}$
	This function absorbs two arguments (the $\langle function \rangle$ name and the $\langle tokens \rangle$ ). The $\langle tokens \rangle$ are expanded until only characters remain, and are then turned into a control sequence. (An internal error will occur if such a conversion is not possible). This control sequence should be the name of a $\langle variable \rangle$ . The content of the $\langle variable \rangle$ are recovered and placed inside braces into the input stream <i>after</i> reinsertion of the $\langle function \rangle$ . Thus the $\langle function \rangle$ may take more than one argument: all others will be left unchanged.
<hr/> <hr/>	<hr/> <hr/>
<code>\exp_args:Nf</code> ★	<code>\exp_args:Nf</code> $\langle function \rangle$ $\{\langle tokens \rangle\}$
	This function absorbs two arguments (the $\langle function \rangle$ name and the $\langle tokens \rangle$ ). The $\langle tokens \rangle$ are fully expanded until the first non-expandable token or space is found, and the result is inserted in braces into the input stream <i>after</i> reinsertion of the $\langle function \rangle$ . Thus the $\langle function \rangle$ may take more than one argument: all others will be left unchanged.
<hr/> <hr/>	<hr/> <hr/>
<code>\exp_args:Nx</code>	<code>\exp_args:Nx</code> $\langle function \rangle$ $\{\langle tokens \rangle\}$
	This function absorbs two arguments (the $\langle function \rangle$ name and the $\langle tokens \rangle$ ) and exhaustively expands the $\langle tokens \rangle$ second. The result is inserted in braces into the input stream <i>after</i> reinsertion of the $\langle function \rangle$ . Thus the $\langle function \rangle$ may take more than one argument: all others will be left unchanged.

## 17 Manipulating two arguments

<hr/> <hr/>	<hr/> <hr/>
<code>\exp_args:NNo</code> ★	<code>\exp_args:NNo</code> $\langle token1 \rangle$ $\langle token2 \rangle$ $\{\langle tokens \rangle\}$
<code>\exp_args:(NNo NNV NNV NNf Nco Ncf Ncc NVV)</code> ★	

These optimized functions absorb three arguments and expand the second and third as detailed by their argument specifier. The first argument of the function is then the next item on the input stream, followed by the expansion of the second and third arguments.

<hr/> <hr/>	<hr/> <hr/>
<code>\exp_args:Nno</code> ★	<code>\exp_args:Nno</code> $\langle token \rangle$ $\{\langle tokens_1 \rangle\}$ $\{\langle tokens_2 \rangle\}$
<code>\exp_args:(NnV Nnf Noo Nof Noc Nff Nfo Nnc)</code> ★	

Updated: 2012-01-14

These functions absorb three arguments and expand the second and third as detailed by their argument specifier. The first argument of the function is then the next item on the input stream, followed by the expansion of the second and third arguments. These functions need special (slower) processing.

---

<code>\exp_args:NNx</code>	<code>\exp_args:NNx &lt;token1&gt; &lt;token2&gt; {\tokens}</code>
<code>\exp_args:(Nnx Ncx Nox Nxo Nxx)</code>	

---

These functions absorb three arguments and expand the second and third as detailed by their argument specifier. The first argument of the function is then the next item on the input stream, followed by the expansion of the second and third arguments. These functions are not expandable.

## 18 Manipulating three arguments

---

<code>\exp_args:NNNo</code>	★	<code>\exp_args:NNNo &lt;token1&gt; &lt;token2&gt; &lt;token3&gt; {\tokens}</code>
<code>\exp_args:(NNNV Nccc NcNc NcNo Ncco)</code>	★	

---

These optimized functions absorb four arguments and expand the second, third and fourth as detailed by their argument specifier. The first argument of the function is then the next item on the input stream, followed by the expansion of the second argument, *etc.*

---

<code>\exp_args:NNoo</code>	★	<code>\exp_args:NNNo &lt;token1&gt; &lt;token2&gt; &lt;token3&gt; {\tokens}</code>
<code>\exp_args:(NNno Nnno Nnnc Nooo)</code>	★	

---

These functions absorb four arguments and expand the second, third and fourth as detailed by their argument specifier. The first argument of the function is then the next item on the input stream, followed by the expansion of the second argument, *etc.* These functions need special (slower) processing.

---

<code>\exp_args:NNnx</code>	<code>\exp_args:NNnx &lt;token1&gt; &lt;token2&gt; {\tokens<sub>1</sub>} {\tokens<sub>2</sub>}</code>
<code>\exp_args:(NNox Nnnx Nnox Noox Ncnx Nccx)</code>	

---

These functions absorb four arguments and expand the second, third and fourth as detailed by their argument specifier. The first argument of the function is then the next item on the input stream, followed by the expansion of the second argument, *etc.*



## 19 Unbraced expansion

---

<code>\exp_last_unbraced:Nf</code>	★	<code>\exp_last_unbraced:Nno &lt;token&gt;</code>
<code>\exp_last_unbraced:(NV No Nv Nco NcV NNV NNo Nno Noo Nfo NNNV NNNo)</code>	★	<code>&lt;tokens1&gt; &lt;tokens2&gt;</code>

---

These functions absorb the number of arguments given by their specification, carry out the expansion indicated and leave the the results in the input stream, with the last argument not surrounded by the usual braces. Of these, the `:Nno`, `:Noo`, and `:Nfo` variants need special (slower) processing.

**T<sub>E</sub>Xhackers note:** As an optimization, the last argument is unbraced by some of those functions before expansion. This can cause problems if the argument is empty: for instance, `\exp_last_unbraced:Nf \mypkg_foo:w { } \q_stop` leads to an infinite loop, as the quark is f-expanded.

---

<code>\exp_last_unbraced:Nx</code>	<code>\exp_last_unbraced:Nx &lt;function&gt; {&lt;tokens&gt;}</code>
------------------------------------	--

---

This functions fully expands the `<tokens>` and leaves the result in the input stream after reinsertion of `<function>`. This function is not expandable.

---

<code>\exp_last_two_unbraced:Noo</code>	★	<code>\exp_last_two_unbraced:Noo &lt;token&gt; &lt;tokens1&gt; {&lt;tokens2&gt;}</code>
---	---	---

---

This function absorbs three arguments and expand the second and third once. The first argument of the function is then the next item on the input stream, followed by the expansion of the second and third arguments, which are not wrapped in braces. This function needs special (slower) processing.

---

<code>\exp_after:wN</code>	★	<code>\exp_after:wN &lt;token1&gt; &lt;token2&gt;</code>
----------------------------	---	--

---

Carries out a single expansion of `<token2>` prior to expansion of `<token1>`. If `<token2>` is a T<sub>E</sub>X primitive, it will be executed rather than expanded, while if `<token2>` has not expansion (for example, if it is a character) then it will be left unchanged. It is important to notice that `<token1>` may be *any* single token, including group-opening and -closing tokens (`{` or `}` assuming normal T<sub>E</sub>X category codes). Unless specifically required, expansion should be carried out using an appropriate argument specifier variant or the appropriate `\exp_arg:N` function.

**T<sub>E</sub>Xhackers note:** This is the T<sub>E</sub>X primitive `\expandafter` renamed.

## 20 Preventing expansion

Despite the fact that the following functions are all about preventing expansion, they're designed to be used in an expandable context and hence are all marked as being 'expandable' since they themselves will not appear after the expansion has completed.

<hr/> <hr/>	<code>\exp_not:N</code> ★	<code>\exp_not:N</code> $\langle token \rangle$
		Prevents expansion of the $\langle token \rangle$ in a context where it would otherwise be expanded, for example an <b>x</b> -type argument.
		<b>T<sub>E</sub>Xhackers note:</b> This is the T <sub>E</sub> X <code>\noexpand</code> primitive.
<hr/> <hr/>	<code>\exp_not:c</code> ★	<code>\exp_not:c</code> $\{\langle tokens \rangle\}$
		Expands the $\langle tokens \rangle$ until only unexpandable content remains, and then converts this into a control sequence. Further expansion of this control sequence is then inhibited.
<hr/> <hr/>	<code>\exp_not:n</code> ★	<code>\exp_not:n</code> $\{\langle tokens \rangle\}$
		Prevents expansion of the $\langle tokens \rangle$ in a context where they would otherwise be expanded, for example an <b>x</b> -type argument.
		<b>T<sub>E</sub>Xhackers note:</b> This is the $\varepsilon$ -T <sub>E</sub> X <code>\unexpanded</code> primitive.
<hr/> <hr/>	<code>\exp_not:V</code> ★	<code>\exp_not:V</code> $\langle variable \rangle$
		Recovers the content of the $\langle variable \rangle$ , then prevents expansion of this material in a context where it would otherwise be expanded, for example an <b>x</b> -type argument.
<hr/> <hr/>	<code>\exp_not:v</code> ★	<code>\exp_not:v</code> $\{\langle tokens \rangle\}$
		Expands the $\langle tokens \rangle$ until only unexpandable content remains, and then converts this into a control sequence (which should be a $\langle variable \rangle$ name). The content of the $\langle variable \rangle$ is recovered, and further expansion is prevented in a context where it would otherwise be expanded, for example an <b>x</b> -type argument.
<hr/> <hr/>	<code>\exp_not:o</code> ★	<code>\exp_not:o</code> $\{\langle tokens \rangle\}$
		Expands the $\langle tokens \rangle$ once, then prevents any further expansion in a context where they would otherwise be expanded, for example an <b>x</b> -type argument.
<hr/> <hr/>	<code>\exp_not:f</code> ★	<code>\exp_not:f</code> $\{\langle tokens \rangle\}$
		Expands $\langle tokens \rangle$ fully until the first unexpandable token is found. Expansion then stops, and the result of the expansion (including any tokens which were not expanded) is protected from further expansion.
<hr/> <hr/>	<code>\exp_stop_f</code> ★	<code>\function:f</code> $\langle tokens \rangle$ <code>\exp_stop_f:</code> $\langle more\ tokens \rangle$
Updated: 2011-06-03		This function terminates an <b>f</b> -type expansion. Thus if a function <code>\function:f</code> starts an <b>f</b> -type expansion and all of $\langle tokens \rangle$ are expandable <code>\exp_stop:f</code> will terminate the expansion of tokens even if $\langle more\ tokens \rangle$ are also expandable. The function itself is an implicit space token. Inside an <b>x</b> -type expansion, it will retain its form, but when typeset it produces the underlying space ( $\sqcup$ ).

## 21 Internal functions and variables

<hr/> <hr/>	
<code>\l_exp_internal_tl</code>	The <code>\exp_</code> module has its private variables to temporarily store results of the argument expansion. This is done to avoid interference with other functions using temporary variables.
<hr/>	
<code>\exp_eval_register:N</code> ★	<code>\exp_eval_register:N</code> $\langle variable \rangle$
<code>\exp_eval_register:c</code> ★	These functions evaluates a $\langle variable \rangle$ as part of a <code>V</code> or <code>v</code> expansion (respectively), preceded by <code>\c_zero</code> which stops the expansion of a previous <code>\romannumeral</code> . A $\langle variable \rangle$ might exist as one of two things: a parameter-less non-long, non-protected macro or a built-in <code>TeX</code> register such as <code>\count</code> .
<hr/>	
<code>\::n</code>	<code>\cs_set_nopar:Npn \exp_args:Ncof { \::c \::o \::f \::: }</code>
<code>\::N</code>	Internal forms for the base expansion types. These names do <i>not</i> conform to the general <code>LaTeX3</code> approach as this makes them more readily visible in the log and so forth.
<code>\::c</code>	
<code>\::o</code>	
<code>\::f</code>	
<code>\::x</code>	
<code>\::v</code>	
<code>\::V</code>	
<code>\:::</code>	
<hr/>	
<code>\cs_generate_internal_variant:n</code>	<code>\cs_generate_internal_variant:n</code> $\langle arg spec \rangle$
	Tests if the function <code>\exp_args:N</code> $\langle arg spec \rangle$ exists, and defines it if it does not. The $\langle arg spec \rangle$ should be a series of one or more of the letters <code>N</code> , <code>c</code> , <code>n</code> , <code>o</code> , <code>V</code> , <code>v</code> , <code>f</code> and <code>x</code> .

## Part VI

# The l3prg package

## Control structures

Conditional processing in L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X3 is defined as something that performs a series of tests, possibly involving assignments and calling other functions that do not read further ahead in the input stream. After processing the input, a *state* is returned. The typical states returned are *⟨true⟩* and *⟨false⟩* but other states are possible, say an *⟨error⟩* state for erroneous input, *e.g.*, text as input in a function comparing integers.

L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X3 has two forms of conditional flow processing based on these states. The first form is predicate functions that turn the returned state into a boolean *⟨true⟩* or *⟨false⟩*. For example, the function `\cs_if_free_p:N` checks whether the control sequence given as its argument is free and then returns the boolean *⟨true⟩* or *⟨false⟩* values to be used in testing with `\if_predicate:w` or in functions to be described below. The second form is the kind of functions choosing a particular argument from the input stream based on the result of the testing as in `\cs_if_free:NTF` which also takes one argument (the N) and then executes either **true** or **false** depending on the result. Important to note here is that the arguments are executed after exiting the underlying `\if... \fi:` structure.

## 22 Defining a set of conditional functions

---

```
\prg_new_conditional:Npnn
\prg_new_conditional:Nnn
\prg_set_conditional:Npnn
\prg_set_conditional:Nnn
```

---

Updated: 2012-02-06

---

```
\prg_new_conditional:Npnn \<name>:<arg spec> <parameters> {<conditions>} {<code>}
\prg_new_conditional:Nnn \<name>:<arg spec> {<conditions>} {<code>}
```

These functions create a family of conditionals using the same *{⟨code⟩}* to perform the test created. Those conditionals are expandable if *⟨code⟩* is. The **new** versions will check for existing definitions and perform assignments globally (*cf.* `\cs_new:Npn`) whereas the **set** versions do no check and perform assignments locally (*cf.* `\cs_set:Npn`). The conditionals created are dependent on the comma-separated list of *⟨conditions⟩*, which should be one or more of p, T, F and TF.

---

```
\prg_new_protected_conditional:Npnn \prg_new_protected_conditional:Npnn \<name>:<arg spec> <parameters>
\prg_new_protected_conditional:Nnn {<conditions>} {<code>}
\prg_set_protected_conditional:Npnn \prg_new_protected_conditional:Nnn \<name>:<arg spec>
\prg_set_protected_conditional:Nnn {<conditions>} {<code>}
```

---

Updated: 2012-02-06

---

These functions create a family of protected conditionals using the same *{⟨code⟩}* to perform the test created. The *⟨code⟩* does not need to be expandable. The **new** version will check for existing definitions and perform assignments globally (*cf.* `\cs_new:Npn`) whereas the **set** version will not (*cf.* `\cs_set:Npn`). The conditionals created are depended on the comma-separated list of *⟨conditions⟩*, which should be one or more of T, F and TF (not p).

The conditionals are defined by `\prg_new_conditional:Npnn` and friends as:

- `\<name>_p:<arg spec>` — a predicate function which will supply either a logical `true` or logical `false`. This function is intended for use in cases where one or more logical tests are combined to lead to a final outcome. This function will not work properly for `protected` conditionals.
- `\<name>:<arg spec>T` — a function with one more argument than the original `<arg spec>` demands. The `<true branch>` code in this additional argument will be left on the input stream only if the test is `true`.
- `\<name>:<arg spec>F` — a function with one more argument than the original `<arg spec>` demands. The `<false branch>` code in this additional argument will be left on the input stream only if the test is `false`.
- `\<name>:<arg spec>TF` — a function with two more argument than the original `<arg spec>` demands. The `<true branch>` code in the first additional argument will be left on the input stream if the test is `true`, while the `<false branch>` code in the second argument will be left on the input stream if the test is `false`.

The `<code>` of the test may use `<parameters>` as specified by the second argument to `\prg_set_conditional:Npnn`: this should match the `<argument specification>` but this is not enforced. The `Nnn` versions infer the number of arguments from the argument specification given (cf. `\cs_new:Nn`, etc.). Within the `<code>`, the functions `\prg_return_true:` and `\prg_return_false:` are used to indicate the logical outcomes of the test.

An example can easily clarify matters here:

```
\prg_set_conditional:Nnn \foo_if_bar:NN { p , T , TF }
{
  \if_meaning:w \l_tmpa_tl #1
    \prg_return_true:
  \else:
    \if_meaning:w \l_tmpa_tl #2
      \prg_return_true:
    \else:
      \prg_return_false:
    \fi:
  \fi:
}
```

This defines the function `\foo_if_bar_p:NN`, `\foo_if_bar:NNTF` and `\foo_if_bar:NNT` but not `\foo_if_bar:NNF` (because `F` is missing from the `<conditions>` list). The return statements take care of resolving the remaining `\else:` and `\fi:` before returning the state. There must be a return statement for each branch, failing to do so will result in an error if that branch is executed.

---

<code>\prg_new_eq_conditional:NNn</code>	<code>\prg_new_eq_conditional:NNn \langle name1 \rangle:\langle arg spec1 \rangle \langle name2 \rangle:\langle arg spec2 \rangle</code>
<code>\prg_set_eq_conditional:NNn</code>	<code>{\langle conditions \rangle}</code>

---

These functions copies a family of conditionals. The `new` version will check for existing definitions (*cf.* `\cs_new:Npn`) whereas the `set` version will not (*cf.* `\cs_set:Npn`). The conditionals copied are depended on the comma-separated list of `\langle conditions \rangle`, which should be one or more of `p`, `T`, `F` and `TF`.

---

<code>\prg_return_true</code> ★	<code>\prg_return_true:</code>
<code>\prg_return_false</code> ★	<code>\prg_return_false:</code>

---

These functions define the logical state at the end of a conditional. As such, they should appear within the code for a conditional statement generated by `\prg_set_conditional:Npnn`, *etc.*

## 23 The boolean data type

This section describes a boolean data type which is closely connected to conditional processing as sometimes you want to execute some code depending on the value of a switch (*e.g.*, `draft/final`) and other times you perhaps want to use it as a predicate function in an `\if_predicate:w` test. The problem of the primitive `\if_false:` and `\if_true:` tokens is that it is not always safe to pass them around as they may interfere with scanning for termination of primitive conditional processing. Therefore, we employ two canonical booleans: `\c_true_bool` or `\c_false_bool`. Besides preventing problems as described above, it also allows us to implement a simple boolean parser supporting the logical operations `And`, `Or`, `Not`, *etc.* which can then be used on both the boolean type and predicate functions.

All conditional `\bool_` functions are expandable and expect the input to also be fully expandable (which will generally mean being constructed from predicate functions, possibly nested).

---

<code>\bool_new:N</code>	<code>\bool_new:N \langle boolean \rangle</code>
<code>\bool_new:c</code>	

---

Creates a new `\langle boolean \rangle` or raises an error if the name is already taken. The declaration is global. The `\langle boolean \rangle` will initially be `false`.

---

<code>\bool_set_false:N</code>	<code>\bool_set_false:N \langle boolean \rangle</code>
<code>\bool_set_false:c</code>	
<code>\bool_gset_false:N</code>	Sets <code>\langle boolean \rangle</code> logically <code>false</code> .
<code>\bool_gset_false:c</code>	

---



---

<code>\bool_set_true:N</code>	<code>\bool_set_true:N \langle boolean \rangle</code>
<code>\bool_set_true:c</code>	
<code>\bool_gset_true:N</code>	Sets <code>\langle boolean \rangle</code> logically <code>true</code> .
<code>\bool_gset_true:c</code>	

---

<hr/>	
<code>\bool_set_eq:NN</code>	<code>\bool_set_eq:NN &lt;boolean1&gt; &lt;boolean2&gt;</code>
<code>\bool_set_eq:(cN Nc cc)</code>	Sets the content of <i>&lt;boolean1&gt;</i> equal to that of <i>&lt;boolean2&gt;</i> .
<code>\bool_gset_eq:NN</code>	
<code>\bool_gset_eq:(cN Nc cc)</code>	
<hr/>	
<code>\bool_set:Nn</code>	<code>\bool_set:Nn &lt;boolean&gt; {&lt;boolexpr&gt;}</code>
<code>\bool_set:cn</code>	Evaluates the <i>&lt;boolean expression&gt;</i> as described for <code>\bool_if:n(TF)</code> , and sets the
<code>\bool_gset:Nn</code>	<i>&lt;boolean&gt;</i> variable to the logical truth of this evaluation.
<code>\bool_gset:cn</code>	
<hr/>	
<code>\bool_if_p:N</code> ★	<code>\bool_if_p:N {&lt;boolean&gt;}</code>
<code>\bool_if_p:c</code> ★	<code>\bool_if:NTF {&lt;boolean&gt;} {&lt;true code&gt;} {&lt;false code&gt;}</code>
<code>\bool_if:NTF</code> ★	Tests the current truth of <i>&lt;boolean&gt;</i> , and continues expansion based on this result.
<code>\bool_if:cTF</code> ★	
<hr/>	
<code>\l_tmpa_bool</code>	A scratch boolean for local assignment. It is never used by the kernel code, and so is safe for use with any L <sup>A</sup> T <sub>E</sub> X3-defined function. However, it may be overwritten by other non-kernel code and so should only be used for short-term storage.
<hr/>	
<code>\g_tmpa_bool</code>	A scratch boolean for global assignment. It is never used by the kernel code, and so is safe for use with any L <sup>A</sup> T <sub>E</sub> X3-defined function. However, it may be overwritten by other non-kernel code and so should only be used for short-term storage.

## 24 Boolean expressions

As we have a boolean datatype and predicate functions returning boolean *<true>* or *<false>* values, it seems only fitting that we also provide a parser for *<boolean expressions>*.

A boolean expression is an expression which given input in the form of predicate functions and boolean variables, return boolean *<true>* or *<false>*. It supports the logical operations And, Or and Not as the well-known infix operators `&&`, `||` and `!`. In addition to this, parentheses can be used to isolate sub-expressions. For example,

```

\int_compare_p:n { 1 = 1 } &&
(
  \int_compare_p:n { 2 = 3 } ||
  \int_compare_p:n { 4 = 4 } ||
  \int_compare_p:n { 1 = \error } % is skipped
) &&
! ( \int_compare_p:n { 2 = 4 } )

```

is a valid boolean expression. Note that minimal evaluation is carried out whenever possible so that whenever a truth value cannot be changed any more, the remaining tests within the current group are skipped.

---

<code>\bool_if_p:n</code> ☆	<code>\bool_if_p:n {&lt;boolean expression&gt;}</code>
<code>\bool_if:nTF</code> ☆	<code>\bool_if:nTF {&lt;boolean expression&gt;} {&lt;true code&gt;} {&lt;false code&gt;}</code>

---

Tests the current truth of *<boolean expression>*, and continues expansion based on this result. The *<boolean expression>* should consist of a series of predicates or boolean variables with the logical relationship between these defined using `&&` (“And”), `||` (“Or”), `!` (“Not”) and parentheses. Minimal evaluation is used in the processing, so that once a result is defined there is not further expansion of the tests. For example

```

\bool_if_p:n
{
  \int_compare_p:nNn { 1 } = { 1 }
  &&
  (
    \int_compare_p:nNn { 2 } = { 3 } ||
    \int_compare_p:nNn { 4 } = { 4 } ||
    \int_compare_p:nNn { 1 } = { \error } % is skipped
  )
  &&
  ! ( \int_compare_p:nNn { 2 } = { 4 } )
}

```

will be **true** and will not evaluate `\int_compare_p:nNn { 1 } = { \error }`. The logical Not applies to the next single predicate or group. As shown above, this means that any predicates requiring an argument have to be given within parentheses.

---

<code>\bool_not_p:n</code> ☆	<code>\bool_not_p:n {&lt;boolean expression&gt;}</code>
------------------------------	---

---

Function version of `!(<boolean expression>)` within a boolean expression.

---

<code>\bool_xor_p:nn</code> ☆	<code>\bool_xor_p:nn {&lt;boolexpri&gt;} {&lt;boolexpri&gt;}</code>
-------------------------------	---

---

Implements an “exclusive or” operation between two boolean expressions. There is no infix operation for this logical operator.

## 25 Logical loops

Loops using either boolean expressions or stored boolean values.

---

<code>\bool_until_do:Nn</code> ☆	<code>\bool_until_do:Nn {&lt;boolean&gt;} {&lt;code&gt;}</code>
<code>\bool_until_do:cn</code> ☆	

---

This function firsts checks the logical value of the *<boolean>*. If it is **false** the *<code>* is placed in the input stream and expanded. After the completion of the *<code>* the truth of the *<boolean>* is re-evaluated. The process will then loop until the *<boolean>* is **true**.

---

<code>\bool_while_do:Nn</code> ☆	<code>\bool_while_do:Nn {&lt;boolean&gt;} {&lt;code&gt;}</code>
<code>\bool_while_do:cn</code> ☆	

---

This function firsts checks the logical value of the *<boolean>*. If it is **true** the *<code>* is placed in the input stream and expanded. After the completion of the *<code>* the truth of the *<boolean>* is re-evaluated. The process will then loop until the *<boolean>* is **false**.



---

`\bool_until_do:nn` ☆ `\bool_until_do:nn {<boolean expression>} {<code>}`

---

This function firsts checks the logical value of the *<boolean expression>* (as described for `\bool_if:nTF`). If it is **false** the *<code>* is placed in the input stream and expanded. After the completion of the *<code>* the truth of the *<boolean expression>* is re-evaluated. The process will then loop until the *<boolean expression>* is **true**.

---

`\bool_while_do:nn` ☆ `\bool_while_do:nn {<boolean expression>} {<code>}`

---

This function firsts checks the logical value of the *<boolean expression>* (as described for `\bool_if:nTF`). If it is **true** the *<code>* is placed in the input stream and expanded. After the completion of the *<code>* the truth of the *<boolean expression>* is re-evaluated. The process will then loop until the *<boolean expression>* is **false**.

## 26 Switching by case

For cases where a number of cases need to be considered a family of case-selecting functions are available.

---

`\prg_case_int:nnn` ☆

---

Updated: 2011-09-17

---

`\prg_case_int:nnn {<test integer expression>}`  
`{`  
`{<intexpr case1>} {<code case1>}`  
`{<intexpr case2>} {<code case2>}`  
`...`  
`{<intexpr casen>} {<code casen>}`  
`}`  
`{<else case>}`

This function evaluates the *<test integer expression>* and compares this in turn to each of the *<integer expression cases>*. If the two are equal then the associated *<code>* is left in the input stream. If none of the tests are **true** then the **else** code will be left in the input stream.

As an example of `\prg_case_int:nnn`:

```
\prg_case_int:nnn
{ 2 * 5 }
{
  { 5 }      { Small }
  { 4 + 6 }  { Medium }
  { -2 * 10 } { Negative }
}
{ No idea! }
```

will leave “Medium” in the input stream.

---

<code>\prg_case_dim:nnn</code> ★ <hr/> Updated: 2011-07-06 <hr/>	<code>\prg_case_dim:nnn {&lt;test dimension expression&gt;}</code> <code>{</code> <code>  {&lt;dimexpr case<sub>1</sub>&gt;} {&lt;code case<sub>1</sub>&gt;}</code> <code>  {&lt;dimexpr case<sub>2</sub>&gt;} {&lt;code case<sub>2</sub>&gt;}</code> <code>  ...</code> <code>  {&lt;dimexpr case<sub>n</sub>&gt;} {&lt;code case<sub>n</sub>&gt;}</code> <code>}</code> <code>{&lt;else case&gt;}</code>
--	---

---

This function evaluates the *<test dimension expression>* and compares this in turn to each of the *<dimension expression cases>*. If the two are equal then the associated *<code>* is left in the input stream. If none of the tests are **true** then the **else** code will be left in the input stream.

---

<code>\prg_case_str:nnn</code> ★ <code>\prg_case_str:(onn xxn)</code> ★ <hr/> Updated: 2011-09-17 <hr/>	<code>\prg_case_str:nnn {&lt;test string&gt;}</code> <code>{</code> <code>  {&lt;string case<sub>1</sub>&gt;} {&lt;code case<sub>1</sub>&gt;}</code> <code>  {&lt;string case<sub>2</sub>&gt;} {&lt;code case<sub>2</sub>&gt;}</code> <code>  ...</code> <code>  {&lt;string case<sub>n</sub>&gt;} {&lt;code case<sub>n</sub>&gt;}</code> <code>}</code> <code>{&lt;else case&gt;}</code>
--	--

---

This function compares the *<test string>* in turn with each of the *<string cases>*. If the two are equal (as described for `\str_if_eq:nnTF` then the associated *<code>* is left in the input stream. If none of the tests are **true** then the **else** code will be left in the input stream. The **xx** variant fully expands *<strings>* before comparing them, but does not expand the corresponding *<code>*. It is fully expandable, in the same way as the underlying `\str_if_eq:xxTF` test.

---

<code>\prg_case_tl:Nnn</code> ★ <code>\prg_case_tl:cnn</code> ★ <hr/> Updated: 2011-09-17 <hr/>	<code>\prg_case_tl:Nnn &lt;test token list variable&gt;</code> <code>{</code> <code>  &lt;token list variable case<sub>1</sub>&gt; {&lt;code case<sub>1</sub>&gt;}</code> <code>  &lt;token list variable case<sub>2</sub>&gt; {&lt;code case<sub>2</sub>&gt;}</code> <code>  ...</code> <code>  &lt;token list variable case<sub>n</sub>&gt; {&lt;code case<sub>n</sub>&gt;}</code> <code>}</code> <code>{&lt;else case&gt;}</code>
--	---

---

This function compares the *<test token list variable>* in turn with each of the *<token list variable cases>*. If the two are equal (as described for `\tl_if_eq:nnTF` then the associated *<code>* is left in the input stream. If none of the tests are **true** then the **else** code will be left in the input stream.

## 27 Producing $n$ copies

---

<code>\prg_replicate:nn</code> ★	<code>\prg_replicate:nn {⟨integer expression⟩} {⟨tokens⟩}</code>
----------------------------------	--

---

Updated: 2011-07-04

Evaluates the  $\langle integer\ expression \rangle$  (which should be zero or positive) and creates the resulting number of copies of the  $\langle tokens \rangle$ . The function is both expandable and safe for nesting. It yields its result after two expansion steps.

---

<code>\prg_stepwise_function:nnnN</code> ☆	<code>\prg_stepwise_function:nnnN {⟨initial value⟩} {⟨step⟩} {⟨final value⟩} {⟨function⟩}</code>
--	--

---

Updated: 2011-09-06

This function first evaluates the  $\langle initial\ value \rangle$ ,  $\langle step \rangle$  and  $\langle final\ value \rangle$ , all of which should be integer expressions. The  $\langle function \rangle$  is then placed in front of each  $\langle value \rangle$  from the  $\langle initial\ value \rangle$  to the  $\langle final\ value \rangle$  in turn (using  $\langle step \rangle$  between each  $\langle value \rangle$ ). Thus  $\langle function \rangle$  should absorb one numerical argument. For example

```
\cs_set:Npn \my_func:n #1 { [I~saw~#1] \quad }
\prg_stepwise_function:nnnN { 1 } { 1 } { 5 } \my_func:n
```

would print

```
[I saw 1]   [I saw 2]   [I saw 3]   [I saw 4]   [I saw 5]
```

---

<code>\prg_stepwise_inline:nnnn</code>	<code>\prg_stepwise_inline:nnnn {⟨initial value⟩} {⟨step⟩} {⟨final value⟩} {⟨code⟩}</code>
--	--

---

Updated: 2011-09-06

This function first evaluates the  $\langle initial\ value \rangle$ ,  $\langle step \rangle$  and  $\langle final\ value \rangle$ , all of which should be integer expressions. The  $\langle code \rangle$  is then placed in front of each  $\langle value \rangle$  from the  $\langle initial\ value \rangle$  to the  $\langle final\ value \rangle$  in turn (using  $\langle step \rangle$  between each  $\langle value \rangle$ ). Thus the  $\langle code \rangle$  should define a function of one argument ( $\#1$ ).

---

<code>\prg_stepwise_variable:nnnNn</code>	<code>\prg_stepwise_variable:nnnNn {⟨initial value⟩} {⟨step⟩} {⟨final value⟩} {⟨tl var⟩} {⟨code⟩}</code>
---	--

---

Updated: 2011-09-06

This function first evaluates the  $\langle initial\ value \rangle$ ,  $\langle step \rangle$  and  $\langle final\ value \rangle$ , all of which should be integer expressions. The  $\langle code \rangle$  is inserted into the input stream, with the  $\langle tl\ var \rangle$  defined as the current  $\langle value \rangle$ . Thus the  $\langle code \rangle$  should make use of the  $\langle tl\ var \rangle$ .

## 28 Detecting T<sub>E</sub>X's mode

---

<code>\mode_if_horizontal_p:</code> ★	<code>\mode_if_horizontal_p:</code>
<code>\mode_if_horizontalTF</code> ★	<code>\mode_if_horizontal:TF {⟨true code⟩} {⟨false code⟩}</code>

---

Detects if T<sub>E</sub>X is currently in horizontal mode.

---

<code>\mode_if_inner_p:</code>	★	<code>\mode_if_inner_p:</code>
<code>\mode_if_inner<u>TF</u></code>	★	<code>\mode_if_inner:TF {\langle true code \rangle} {\langle false code \rangle}</code>

---

Detects if  $\text{\TeX}$  is currently in inner mode.

---

<code>\mode_if_math_p:</code>	★	<code>\mode_if_math:TF {\langle true code \rangle} {\langle false code \rangle}</code>
<code>\mode_if_math<u>TF</u></code>	★	

---

Detects if  $\text{\TeX}$  is currently in maths mode.

Updated: 2011-09-05

---



---

<code>\mode_if_vertical_p:</code>	★	<code>\mode_if_vertical_p:</code>
<code>\mode_if_vertical<u>TF</u></code>	★	<code>\mode_if_vertical:TF {\langle true code \rangle} {\langle false code \rangle}</code>

---

Detects if  $\text{\TeX}$  is currently in vertical mode.

## 29 Internal programming functions

---

<code>\group_align_safe_begin</code>	★	<code>\group_align_safe_begin:</code>
<code>\group_align_safe_end</code>	★	<code>...</code>

---

Updated: 2011-08-11

---

`\group_align_safe_end:`

These functions are used to enclose material in a  $\text{\TeX}$  alignment environment within a specially-constructed group. This group is designed in such a way that it does not add brace groups to the output but does act as a group for the `&` token inside `\halign`. This is necessary to allow grabbing of tokens for testing purposes, as  $\text{\TeX}$  uses group level to determine the effect of alignment tokens. Without the special grouping, the use of a function such as `\peek_after:Nw` will result in a forbidden comparison of the internal `\endtemplate` token, yielding a fatal error. Each `\group_align_safe_begin:` must be matched by a `\group_align_safe_end:`, although this does not have to occur within the same function.

---

<code>\scan_align_safe_stop</code>		<code>\scan_align_safe_stop:</code>
------------------------------------	--	-------------------------------------

---

Updated: 2011-09-06

---

Stops  $\text{\TeX}$ 's scanner looking for expandable control sequences at the beginning of an alignment cell. This function is required, for example, to obtain the expected output when testing `\mode_if_math:TF` at the start of a math array cell: placing `\scan_align_safe_stop:` before `\mode_if_math:TF` will give the correct result. This function does not destroy any kerning if used in other locations, but *does* render functions non-expandable.

**$\text{\TeX}$ hackers note:** This is a protected version of `\prg_do_nothing:`, which therefore stops  $\text{\TeX}$ 's scanner in the circumstances described without producing any affect on the output.

---

<code>\prg_variable_get_scope:N</code>	★	<code>\prg_variable_get_scope:N \langle variable \rangle</code>
--	---	---

---

Returns the scope (g for global, blank otherwise) for the `\langle variable \rangle`.

<hr/> <hr/>	<code>\prg_variable_get_type:N</code> ★	<code>\prg_variable_get_type:N</code> $\langle variable \rangle$ Returns the type of $\langle variable \rangle$ (tl, int, etc.)
<hr/> <hr/>	<code>\if_predicate:w</code> ★	<code>\if_predicate:w</code> $\langle predicate \rangle$ $\langle true\ code \rangle$ <code>\else:</code> $\langle false\ code \rangle$ <code>\fi:</code> This function takes a predicate function and branches according to the result. (In practice this function would also accept a single boolean variable in place of the $\langle predicate \rangle$ but to make the coding clearer this should be done through <code>\if_bool:N</code> .)
<hr/> <hr/>	<code>\if_bool:N</code> ★	<code>\if_bool:N</code> $\langle boolean \rangle$ $\langle true\ code \rangle$ <code>\else:</code> $\langle false\ code \rangle$ <code>\fi:</code> This function takes a boolean variable and branches according to the result.
<hr/> <hr/>	<code>\prg_break_point:n</code> ★	<code>\prg_break_point:n</code> $\langle tokens \rangle$ Used to mark the end of a recursion or mapping: the functions <code>\prg_map_break:</code> and <code>\prg_map_break:n</code> use this to break out of the loop. After the loop ends, the $\langle tokens \rangle$ are inserted into the input stream. This occurs even if the the break functions are <i>not</i> applied: <code>\prg_break_point:n</code> is functionally-equivalent in these cases to <code>\use:n</code> .
<hr/> <hr/>	<code>\prg_map_break:n</code> ★	<code>\prg_map_break:n</code> $\{ \langle user\ code \rangle \}$ ... <code>\prg_break_point:n</code> $\{ \langle ending\ code \rangle \}$ Breaks a recursion in mapping contexts, inserting in the input stream the $\langle user\ code \rangle$ after the $\langle ending\ code \rangle$ for the loop.

## 30 Experimental programmings functions

<hr/> <hr/>	<code>\prg_quicksort:n</code>	<code>\prg_quicksort:n</code> $\{ \{ \langle item_1 \rangle \} \{ \langle item_2 \rangle \} \dots \{ \langle item\ n \rangle \} \}$ Performs a quicksort on the token list. The comparisons are performed by the function <code>\prg_quicksort_compare:nnTF</code> which is up to the programmer to define. When the sorting process is over, all items are given as argument to the function <code>\prg_quicksort_function:n</code> which the programmer also controls.
-------------	-------------------------------	---

---

<code>\prg_quicksort_function:n</code>	<code>\prg_quicksort_function:n {&lt;element&gt;}</code>
<code>\prg_quicksort_compare:nnTF</code>	<code>\prg_quicksort_compare:nnTF {&lt;element<sub>1</sub>&gt;} {&lt;element<sub>2</sub>&gt;}</code>

---

The two functions the programmer must define before calling `\prg_quicksort:n`. As an example we could define

```
\cs_set_nopar:Npn\prg_quicksort_function:n #1{{#1}}
\cs_set_nopar:Npn\prg_quicksort_compare:nnTF #1#2 {\int_compare:nNnTF{#1}>{#2}}
```

Then the function call

```
\prg_quicksort:n {876234520}
```

would return `{0}{2}{2}{3}{4}{5}{6}{7}{8}`. An alternative example where one sorts a list of words, `\prg_quicksort_compare:nnTF` could be defined as

```
\cs_set_nopar:Npn\prg_quicksort_compare:nnTF #1#2 {
  \int_compare:nNnTF{\tl_compare:nn{#1}{#2}}>\c_zero }
```

## Part VII

# The l3quark package

## Quarks

Two special types of constants in L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X3 are “quarks” and “scan marks”. By convention all constants of type quark start out with `\q_`, and scan marks start with `\s_`.

*Scan marks are an experimental feature.*

Quarks are control sequences that expand to themselves and should therefore *never* be executed directly in the code. This would result in an endless loop!

They are meant to be used as delimiter in weird functions (for example as the stop token (*i.e.* `\q_stop`)). They also permit the following ingenious trick: when you pick up a token in a temporary, and you want to know whether you have picked up a particular quark, all you have to do is compare the temporary to the quark using `\if_meaning:w`. A set of special quark testing functions is set up below. All the quark testing functions are expandable although the ones testing only single tokens are much faster.

Scan marks are control sequences set equal to `\scan_stop:`, hence will never expand.

Like quarks, they can be used as delimiters in weird functions. Since they are harmless when executed by T<sub>E</sub>X in non-expandable contexts, they can be used to mark the end of a set of instructions. This allows to skip to that point if the end of the instructions should not be performed (see l3regex).

### 31 Defining quarks

<u><code>\quark_new:N</code></u>	<code>\quark_new:N &lt;quark&gt;</code> Creates a new <code>&lt;quark&gt;</code> which expands only to <code>&lt;quark&gt;</code> . The <code>&lt;quark&gt;</code> will be defined globally, and an error message will be raised if the name was already taken.
<u><code>\q_stop</code></u>	Used as a marker for delimited arguments, such as $\cs_set:Npn \tmp:w \#1\#2 \q_stop \{ \#1 \}$
<u><code>\q_mark</code></u>	Used as a marker for delimited arguments when <code>\q_stop</code> is already in use.  Quark to mark a null value in structured variables or functions. Used as an end delimiter when this may itself may need to be tested (in contrast to <code>\q_stop</code> , which is only ever used as a delimiter).
<u><code>\q_no_value</code></u>	A canonical value for a missing value, when one is requested from a data structure. This is therefore used as a “return” value by functions such as <code>\prop_get:NnN</code> if there is no data to return.

## 32 Quark tests

The method used to define quarks means that the single token (N) tests are faster than the multi-token (n) tests. The later should therefore only be used when the argument can definitely take more than a single token.

---

<code>\quark_if_nil_p:N</code>	★	<code>\quark_if_nil_p:N</code>	$\langle token \rangle$
<code>\quark_if_nil:NTF</code>	★	<code>\quark_if_nil:NTF</code>	$\langle token \rangle$ $\{\langle true code \rangle\}$ $\{\langle false code \rangle\}$

---

Tests if the  $\langle token \rangle$  is equal to `\q_nil`.

---

<code>\quark_if_nil_p:n</code>	★	<code>\quark_if_nil_p:n</code>	$\{\langle token list \rangle\}$
<code>\quark_if_nil_p:(o V)</code>	★	<code>\quark_if_nil:nTF</code>	$\{\langle token list \rangle\}$ $\{\langle true code \rangle\}$ $\{\langle false code \rangle\}$
<code>\quark_if_nil:nTF</code>	★	Tests if the $\langle token list \rangle$ contains only <code>\q_nil</code> (distinct from $\langle token list \rangle$ being empty or containing <code>\q_nil</code> plus one or more other tokens).	
<code>\quark_if_nil:(o V)TF</code>	★		

---



---

<code>\quark_if_no_value_p:N</code>	★	<code>\quark_if_no_value_p:N</code>	$\langle token \rangle$
<code>\quark_if_no_value_p:c</code>	★	<code>\quark_if_no_value:NTF</code>	$\langle token \rangle$ $\{\langle true code \rangle\}$ $\{\langle false code \rangle\}$
<code>\quark_if_no_value:NTF</code>	★	Tests if the $\langle token \rangle$ is equal to <code>\q_no_value</code> .	
<code>\quark_if_no_value:cTF</code>	★		

---



---

<code>\quark_if_no_value_p:n</code>	★	<code>\quark_if_no_value_p:n</code>	$\{\langle token list \rangle\}$
<code>\quark_if_no_value:nTF</code>	★	<code>\quark_if_no_value:nTF</code>	$\{\langle token list \rangle\}$ $\{\langle true code \rangle\}$ $\{\langle false code \rangle\}$

---

Tests if the  $\langle token list \rangle$  contains only `\q_no_value` (distinct from  $\langle token list \rangle$  being empty or containing `\q_no_value` plus one or more other tokens).

## 33 Recursion

This module provides a uniform interface to intercepting and terminating loops as when one is doing tail recursion. The building blocks follow below.

This quark is appended to the data structure in question and appears as a real element there. This means it gets any list separators around it.

---

<code>\q_recursion_stop</code>	This quark is added <i>after</i> the data structure. Its purpose is to make it possible to terminate the recursion at any point easily.
--------------------------------	---

---



---

<code>\quark_if_recursion_tail_stop:N</code>	<code>\quark_if_recursion_tail_stop:N</code>	$\langle token \rangle$
--	--	-------------------------

---

Tests if  $\langle token \rangle$  contains only the marker `\q_recursion_tail`, and if so terminates the recursion this is part of using `\use_none_delimit_by_q_recursion_stop:w`. The recursion input must include the marker tokens `\q_recursion_tail` and `\q_recursion_stop` as the last two items.



---

```
\quark_if_recursion_tail_stop:n \quark_if_recursion_tail_stop:n {\token list}
\quark_if_recursion_tail_stop:o
```

---

Updated: 2011-09-06

---

Tests if the  $\langle token list \rangle$  contains only `\q_recursion_tail`, and if so terminates the recursion this is part of using `\use_none_delimit_by_q_recursion_stop:w`. The recursion input must include the marker tokens `\q_recursion_tail` and `\q_recursion_stop` as the last two items.

---

```
\quark_if_recursion_tail_stop_do:Nn \quark_if_recursion_tail_stop_do:Nn \token {\insertion}
```

---

Tests if  $\langle token \rangle$  contains only the marker `\q_recursion_tail`, and if so terminates the recursion this is part of using `\use_none_delimit_by_q_recursion_stop:w`. The recursion input must include the marker tokens `\q_recursion_tail` and `\q_recursion_stop` as the last two items. The  $\langle insertion \rangle$  code is then added to the input stream after the recursion has ended.

---

```
\quark_if_recursion_tail_stop_do:nn \quark_if_recursion_tail_stop_do:nn {\token list} {\insertion}
\quark_if_recursion_tail_stop_do:on
```

---

Updated: 2011-09-06

---

Tests if the  $\langle token list \rangle$  contains only `\q_recursion_tail`, and if so terminates the recursion this is part of using `\use_none_delimit_by_q_recursion_stop:w`. The recursion input must include the marker tokens `\q_recursion_tail` and `\q_recursion_stop` as the last two items. The  $\langle insertion \rangle$  code is then added to the input stream after the recursion has ended.

---

```
\quark_if_recursion_tail_break:N \quark_if_recursion_tail_break:n {\token list}
\quark_if_recursion_tail_break:n
```

---

Tests if  $\langle token list \rangle$  contains only `\q_recursion_tail`, and if so terminates the recursion using `\prg_map_break:.` The recursion end should be marked by `\prg_break_point:n`.

## 34 Scan marks

---

```
\scan_new:N \scan_new:N \scan mark
```

---

Creates a new  $\langle scan mark \rangle$  which is set equal to `\scan_stop:.` The  $\langle scan mark \rangle$  will be defined globally, and an error message will be raised if the name was already taken by another scan mark.

---

```
\s_stop \s_stop Used at the end of a set of instructions, as a marker that can be jumped to using \use_
none_delimit_by_s_stop:w.
```

---

---

---

`\use_none_delimit_by_s_stop:w`

---

---

`\cs`

---

 `use_none_delimit_by_s_stop:w`  $\langle tokens \rangle$  `\s_stop`  
Removes the  $\langle tokens \rangle$  and `\s_stop` from the input stream. This leads to a low-level TeX error if `\s_stop` is absent.

## 35 Internal quark functions

---

---

`\use_none_delimit_by_q_recursion_stop:w` `\use_none_delimit_by_q_recursion_stop:w`  $\langle tokens \rangle$   
`\q_recursion_stop`

---

Used to prematurely terminate a recursion using `\q_recursion_stop` as the end marker, removing any remaining  $\langle tokens \rangle$  from the input stream.

---

---

`\use_i_delimit_by_q_recursion_stop:nw` `\use_i_delimit_by_q_recursion_stop:nw`  $\{\langle insertion \rangle\}$   
 $\langle tokens \rangle$  `\q_recursion_stop`

---

Used to prematurely terminate a recursion using `\q_recursion_stop` as the end marker, removing any remaining  $\langle tokens \rangle$  from the input stream. The  $\langle insertion \rangle$  is then made into the input stream after the end of the recursion.

## Part VIII

# The l3token package

## Token manipulation

This module deals with tokens. Now this is perhaps not the most precise description so let's try with a better description: When programming in T<sub>E</sub>X, it is often desirable to know just what a certain token is: is it a control sequence or something else. Similarly one often needs to know if a control sequence is expandable or not, a macro or a primitive, how many arguments it takes etc. Another thing of great importance (especially when it comes to document commands) is looking ahead in the token stream to see if a certain character is present and maybe even remove it or disregard other tokens while scanning. This module provides functions for both and as such will have two primary function categories: `\token` for anything that deals with tokens and `\peek` for looking ahead in the token stream.

Most of the time we will be using the term “token” but most of the time the function we're describing can equally well be used on a control sequence as such one is one token as well.

We shall refer to list of tokens as `tlists` and such lists represented by a single control sequence is a “token list variable” `tl var`. Functions for these two types are found in the `l3tl` module.

## 36 All possible tokens

Let us start by reviewing every case that a given token can fall into. It is very important to distinguish two aspects of a token: its meaning, and what it looks like.

For instance, `\if:w`, `\if_charcode:w`, and `\tex_if:D` are three for the same internal operation of T<sub>E</sub>X, namely the primitive testing the next two characters for equality of their character code. They behave identically in many situations. However, T<sub>E</sub>X distinguishes them when searching for a delimited argument. Namely, the example function `\show_until_if:w` defined below will take everything until `\if:w` as an argument, despite the presence of other copies of `\if:w` under different names.

```
\cs_new:Npn \show_until_if:w #1 \if:w { \tl_show:n {#1} }  
\show_until_if:w \tex_if:D \if_charcode:w \if:w
```

## 37 Character tokens

---

<code>\char_set_catcode_escape:N</code>	<code>\char_set_catcode_letter:N</code> $\langle character \rangle$
<code>\char_set_catcode_group_begin:N</code>	
<code>\char_set_catcode_group_end:N</code>	
<code>\char_set_catcode_math_toggle:N</code>	
<code>\char_set_catcode_alignment:N</code>	
<code>\char_set_catcode_end_line:N</code>	
<code>\char_set_catcode_parameter:N</code>	
<code>\char_set_catcode_math_superscript:N</code>	
<code>\char_set_catcode_math_subscript:N</code>	
<code>\char_set_catcode_ignore:N</code>	
<code>\char_set_catcode_space:N</code>	
<code>\char_set_catcode_letter:N</code>	
<code>\char_set_catcode_other:N</code>	
<code>\char_set_catcode_active:N</code>	
<code>\char_set_catcode_comment:N</code>	
<code>\char_set_catcode_invalid:N</code>	

---

Sets the category code of the  $\langle character \rangle$  to that indicated in the function name. Depending on the current category code of the  $\langle token \rangle$  the escape token may also be needed:

`\char_set_catcode_other:N \%`

The assignment is local.

---

<code>\char_set_catcode_escape:n</code>	<code>\char_set_catcode_letter:n</code> $\{ \langle integer\ expression \rangle \}$
<code>\char_set_catcode_group_begin:n</code>	
<code>\char_set_catcode_group_end:n</code>	
<code>\char_set_catcode_math_toggle:n</code>	
<code>\char_set_catcode_alignment:n</code>	
<code>\char_set_catcode_end_line:n</code>	
<code>\char_set_catcode_parameter:n</code>	
<code>\char_set_catcode_math_superscript:n</code>	
<code>\char_set_catcode_math_subscript:n</code>	
<code>\char_set_catcode_ignore:n</code>	
<code>\char_set_catcode_space:n</code>	
<code>\char_set_catcode_letter:n</code>	
<code>\char_set_catcode_other:n</code>	
<code>\char_set_catcode_active:n</code>	
<code>\char_set_catcode_comment:n</code>	
<code>\char_set_catcode_invalid:n</code>	

---

Sets the category code of the  $\langle character \rangle$  which has character code as given by the  $\langle integer\ expression \rangle$ . This version can be used to set up characters which cannot otherwise be given (*cf.* the N-type variants). The assignment is local.

<hr/> <hr/> <code>\char_set_catcode:nn</code>	<code>\char_set_catcode:nn {⟨integer<sub>1</sub>⟩} {⟨integer<sub>2</sub>⟩}</code>
	These functions set the category code of the <i>⟨character⟩</i> which has character code as given by the <i>⟨integer expression⟩</i> . The first <i>⟨integer expression⟩</i> is the character code and the second is the category code to apply. The setting applies within the current T <sub>E</sub> X group. In general, the symbolic functions <code>\char_set_catcode_⟨type⟩</code> should be preferred, but there are cases where these lower-level functions may be useful.
<hr/> <hr/> <code>\char_value_catcode:n</code> ★	<code>\char_value_catcode:n {⟨integer expression⟩}</code>
	Expands to the current category code of the <i>⟨character⟩</i> with character code given by the <i>⟨integer expression⟩</i> .
<hr/> <hr/> <code>\char_show_value_catcode:n</code>	<code>\char_show_value_catcode:n {⟨integer expression⟩}</code>
	Displays the current category code of the <i>⟨character⟩</i> with character code given by the <i>⟨integer expression⟩</i> on the terminal.
<hr/> <hr/> <code>\char_set_lccode:nn</code>	<code>\char_set_lccode:nn {⟨integer<sub>1</sub>⟩} {⟨integer<sub>2</sub>⟩}</code>
	This function set up the behaviour of <i>⟨character⟩</i> when found inside <code>\tl_to_lowercase:n</code> , such that <i>⟨character<sub>1</sub>⟩</i> will be converted into <i>⟨character<sub>2</sub>⟩</i> . The two <i>⟨characters⟩</i> may be specified using an <i>⟨integer expression⟩</i> for the character code concerned. This may include the T <sub>E</sub> X ‘ <i>⟨character⟩</i> ’ method for converting a single character into its character code:  <pre> \char_set_lccode:nn { ‘\A } { ‘\a } % Standard behaviour \char_set_lccode:nn { ‘\A } { ‘\A + 32 } \char_set_lccode:nn { 50 } { 60 } </pre> The setting applies within the current T <sub>E</sub> X group.
<hr/> <hr/> <code>\char_value_lccode:n</code> ★	<code>\char_value_lccode:n {⟨integer expression⟩}</code>
	Expands to the current lower case code of the <i>⟨character⟩</i> with character code given by the <i>⟨integer expression⟩</i> .
<hr/> <hr/> <code>\char_show_value_lccode:n</code>	<code>\char_show_value_lccode:n {⟨integer expression⟩}</code>
	Displays the current lower case code of the <i>⟨character⟩</i> with character code given by the <i>⟨integer expression⟩</i> on the terminal.

---

<code>\char_set_uccode:nn</code>	<code>\char_set_uccode:nn {⟨integer<sub>1</sub>⟩} {⟨integer<sub>2</sub>⟩}</code>
----------------------------------	--

---

This function set up the behaviour of  $\langle character \rangle$  when found inside `\tl_to_uppercase:n`, such that  $\langle character_1 \rangle$  will be converted into  $\langle character_2 \rangle$ . The two  $\langle characters \rangle$  may be specified using an  $\langle integer\ expression \rangle$  for the character code concerned. This may include the T<sub>E</sub>X ‘ $\langle character \rangle$ ’ method for converting a single character into its character code:

```
\char_set_uccode:nn { '\a } { '\A } % Standard behaviour
\char_set_uccode:nn { '\A } { '\A - 32 }
\char_set_uccode:nn { 60 } { 50 }
```

The setting applies within the current T<sub>E</sub>X group.

---

<code>\char_value_uccode:n</code> ★	<code>\char_value_uccode:n {⟨integer expression⟩}</code>
-------------------------------------	--

---

Expands to the current upper case code of the  $\langle character \rangle$  with character code given by the  $\langle integer\ expression \rangle$ .

---

<code>\char_show_value_uccode:n</code>	<code>\char_show_value_uccode:n {⟨integer expression⟩}</code>
--	---

---

Displays the current upper case code of the  $\langle character \rangle$  with character code given by the  $\langle integer\ expression \rangle$  on the terminal.

---

<code>\char_set_mathcode:nn</code>	<code>\char_set_mathcode:nn {⟨integer<sub>1</sub>⟩} {⟨integer<sub>2</sub>⟩}</code>
------------------------------------	--

---

This function sets up the math code of  $\langle character \rangle$ . The  $\langle character \rangle$  is specified as an  $\langle integer\ expression \rangle$  which will be used as the character code of the relevant character. The setting applies within the current T<sub>E</sub>X group.

---

<code>\char_value_mathcode:n</code> ★	<code>\char_value_mathcode:n {⟨integer expression⟩}</code>
---------------------------------------	--

---

Expands to the current math code of the  $\langle character \rangle$  with character code given by the  $\langle integer\ expression \rangle$ .

---

<code>\char_show_value_mathcode:n</code>	<code>\char_show_value_mathcode:n {⟨integer expression⟩}</code>
--	---

---

Displays the current math code of the  $\langle character \rangle$  with character code given by the  $\langle integer\ expression \rangle$  on the terminal.

---

<code>\char_set_sfcode:nn</code>	<code>\char_set_sfcode:nn {⟨integer<sub>1</sub>⟩} {⟨integer<sub>2</sub>⟩}</code>
----------------------------------	--

---

This function sets up the space factor for the  $\langle character \rangle$ . The  $\langle character \rangle$  is specified as an  $\langle integer\ expression \rangle$  which will be used as the character code of the relevant character. The setting applies within the current T<sub>E</sub>X group.

---

<code>\char_value_sfcode:n</code> ★	<code>\char_value_sfcode:n {⟨integer expression⟩}</code>
-------------------------------------	--

---

Expands to the current space factor for the  $\langle character \rangle$  with character code given by the  $\langle integer\ expression \rangle$ .

---

<code>\char_show_value_sfcode:n</code>	<code>\char_show_value_sfcode:n {\langle integer expression \rangle}</code>
--	---

---

Displays the current space factor for the  $\langle character \rangle$  with character code given by the  $\langle integer expression \rangle$  on the terminal.

---

<code>\l_char_active_seq</code>	Used to track which tokens will require special handling at the document level as they are of category $\langle active \rangle$ (catcode 13). Each entry in the sequence consists of a single active character. Active tokens should be added to the sequence when they are defined for general document use.
---------------------------------	---

---

New: 2012-01-23

---



---

<code>\l_char_special_seq</code>	Used to track which tokens will require special handling when working with verbatim-like material at the document level as they are not of categories $\langle letter \rangle$ (catcode 11) or $\langle other \rangle$ (catcode 12). Each entry in the sequence consists of a single escaped token, for example <code>\</code> for the backslash or <code>\{</code> for an opening brace. Escaped tokens should be added to the sequence when they are defined for general document use.
----------------------------------	--

---

New: 2012-01-23

---

## 38 Generic tokens

---

<code>\token_new:Nn</code>	<code>\token_new:Nn \langle token1 \rangle {\langle token2 \rangle}</code>
----------------------------	--

---

Defines  $\langle token1 \rangle$  to globally be a snapshot of  $\langle token2 \rangle$ . This will be an implicit representation of  $\langle token2 \rangle$ .

---

<code>\c_group_begin_token</code> <code>\c_group_end_token</code> <code>\c_math_toggle_token</code> <code>\c_alignment_token</code> <code>\c_parameter_token</code> <code>\c_math_superscript_token</code> <code>\c_math_subscript_token</code> <code>\c_space_token</code>	These are implicit tokens which have the category code described by their name. They are used internally for test purposes but are also available to the programmer for other uses.
--	---

---



---

<code>\c_catcode_letter_token</code> <code>\c_catcode_other_token</code>	These are implicit tokens which have the category code described by their name. They are used internally for test purposes and should not be used other than for category code tests.
---	---

---



---

<code>\c_catcode_active_tl</code>	A token list containing an active token. This is used internally for test purposes and should not be used other than in appropriately-constructed category code tests.
-----------------------------------	--

---

## 39 Converting tokens

---

<code>\token_to_meaning:N</code> ★	<code>\token_to_meaning:N &lt;token&gt;</code>
------------------------------------	--

---

Inserts the current meaning of the  $\langle token \rangle$  into the input stream as a series of characters of category code 12 (other). This will be the primitive  $\text{\TeX}$  description of the  $\langle token \rangle$ , thus for example both functions defined by `\cs_set_nopar:Npn` and token list variables defined using `\tl_new:N` will be described as macros.

**$\text{\TeX}$ hackers note:** This is the  $\text{\TeX}$  primitive `\meaning`.

---

<code>\token_to_str:N</code> ★	<code>\token_to_str:N &lt;token&gt;</code>
<code>\token_to_str:c</code> ★	

---

Converts the given  $\langle token \rangle$  into a series of characters with category code 12 (other). The current escape character will be the first character in the sequence, although this will also have category code 12 (the escape character is part of the  $\langle token \rangle$ ). This function requires only a single expansion.

**$\text{\TeX}$ hackers note:** `\token_to_str:N` is the  $\text{\TeX}$  primitive `\string` renamed.

## 40 Token conditionals

---

<code>\token_if_group_begin_p:N</code> ★	<code>\token_if_group_begin_p:N &lt;token&gt;</code>
<code>\token_if_group_begin:NTF</code> ★	<code>\token_if_group_begin:NTF &lt;token&gt; {\true code} {\false code}</code>

---

Tests if  $\langle token \rangle$  has the category code of a begin group token (`{` when normal  $\text{\TeX}$  category codes are in force). Note that an explicit begin group token cannot be tested in this way, as it is not a valid N-type argument.

---

<code>\token_if_group_end_p:N</code> ★	<code>\token_if_group_end_p:N &lt;token&gt;</code>
<code>\token_if_group_end:NTF</code> ★	<code>\token_if_group_end:NTF &lt;token&gt; {\true code} {\false code}</code>

---

Tests if  $\langle token \rangle$  has the category code of an end group token (`}` when normal  $\text{\TeX}$  category codes are in force). Note that an explicit end group token cannot be tested in this way, as it is not a valid N-type argument.

---

<code>\token_if_math_toggle_p:N</code> ★	<code>\token_if_math_toggle_p:N &lt;token&gt;</code>
<code>\token_if_math_toggle:NTF</code> ★	<code>\token_if_math_toggle:NTF &lt;token&gt; {\true code} {\false code}</code>

---

Tests if  $\langle token \rangle$  has the category code of a math shift token (`$` when normal  $\text{\TeX}$  category codes are in force).

---

<code>\token_if_alignment_p:N</code> ★	<code>\token_if_alignment_p:N &lt;token&gt;</code>
<code>\token_if_alignment:NTF</code> ★	<code>\token_if_alignment:NTF &lt;token&gt; {\true code} {\false code}</code>

---

Tests if  $\langle token \rangle$  has the category code of an alignment token (`&` when normal  $\text{\TeX}$  category codes are in force).



---

<code>\token_if_parameter_p:N</code>	★	<code>\token_if_parameter_p:N</code>	$\langle token \rangle$
<code>\token_if_parameter:NTF</code>	★	<code>\token_if_alignment:NTF</code>	$\langle token \rangle$ $\{\langle true code \rangle\}$ $\{\langle false code \rangle\}$

---

Tests if  $\langle token \rangle$  has the category code of a macro parameter token (# when normal T<sub>E</sub>X category codes are in force).

---

<code>\token_if_math_superscript_p:N</code>	★	<code>\token_if_math_superscript_p:N</code>	$\langle token \rangle$
<code>\token_if_math_superscript:NTF</code>	★	<code>\token_if_math_superscript:NTF</code>	$\langle token \rangle$ $\{\langle true code \rangle\}$ $\{\langle false code \rangle\}$

---

Tests if  $\langle token \rangle$  has the category code of a superscript token (^ when normal T<sub>E</sub>X category codes are in force).

---

<code>\token_if_math_subscript_p:N</code>	★	<code>\token_if_math_subscript_p:N</code>	$\langle token \rangle$
<code>\token_if_math_subscript:NTF</code>	★	<code>\token_if_math_subscript:NTF</code>	$\langle token \rangle$ $\{\langle true code \rangle\}$ $\{\langle false code \rangle\}$

---

Tests if  $\langle token \rangle$  has the category code of a subscript token (\_ when normal T<sub>E</sub>X category codes are in force).

---

<code>\token_if_space_p:N</code>	★	<code>\token_if_space_p:N</code>	$\langle token \rangle$
<code>\token_if_space:NTF</code>	★	<code>\token_if_space:NTF</code>	$\langle token \rangle$ $\{\langle true code \rangle\}$ $\{\langle false code \rangle\}$

---

Tests if  $\langle token \rangle$  has the category code of a space token. Note that an explicit space token with character code 32 cannot be tested in this way, as it is not a valid N-type argument.

---

<code>\token_if_letter_p:N</code>	★	<code>\token_if_letter_p:N</code>	$\langle token \rangle$
<code>\token_if_letter:NTF</code>	★	<code>\token_if_letter:NTF</code>	$\langle token \rangle$ $\{\langle true code \rangle\}$ $\{\langle false code \rangle\}$

---

Tests if  $\langle token \rangle$  has the category code of a letter token.

---

<code>\token_if_other_p:N</code>	★	<code>\token_if_other_p:N</code>	$\langle token \rangle$
<code>\token_if_other:NTF</code>	★	<code>\token_if_other:NTF</code>	$\langle token \rangle$ $\{\langle true code \rangle\}$ $\{\langle false code \rangle\}$

---

Tests if  $\langle token \rangle$  has the category code of an “other” token.

---

<code>\token_if_active_p:N</code>	★	<code>\token_if_active_p:N</code>	$\langle token \rangle$
<code>\token_if_active:NTF</code>	★	<code>\token_if_active:NTF</code>	$\langle token \rangle$ $\{\langle true code \rangle\}$ $\{\langle false code \rangle\}$

---

Tests if  $\langle token \rangle$  has the category code of an active character.

---

<code>\token_if_eq_catcode_p:NN</code>	★	<code>\token_if_eq_catcode_p:NN</code>	$\langle token1 \rangle$ $\langle token2 \rangle$
<code>\token_if_eq_catcode:NNTF</code>	★	<code>\token_if_eq_catcode:NNTF</code>	$\langle token1 \rangle$ $\langle token2 \rangle$ $\{\langle true code \rangle\}$ $\{\langle false code \rangle\}$

---

Tests if the two  $\langle tokens \rangle$  have the same category code.

---

<code>\token_if_eq_charcode_p:NN</code>	★	<code>\token_if_eq_charcode_p:NN</code>	$\langle token1 \rangle$ $\langle token2 \rangle$
<code>\token_if_eq_charcode:NNTF</code>	★	<code>\token_if_eq_charcode:NNTF</code>	$\langle token1 \rangle$ $\langle token2 \rangle$ $\{\langle true code \rangle\}$ $\{\langle false code \rangle\}$

---

Tests if the two  $\langle tokens \rangle$  have the same character code.

---

<code>\token_if_eq_meaning_p:NN</code>	★	<code>\token_if_eq_meaning_p:NN</code>	$\langle token1 \rangle$	$\langle token2 \rangle$
<code>\token_if_eq_meaning:NNTF</code>	★	<code>\token_if_eq_meaning:NNTF</code>	$\langle token1 \rangle$	$\langle token2 \rangle$ $\{\langle true\ code \rangle\}$ $\{\langle false\ code \rangle\}$

---

Tests if the two  $\langle tokens \rangle$  have the same meaning when expanded.

---

<code>\token_if_macro_p:N</code>	★	<code>\token_if_macro_p:N</code>	$\langle token \rangle$
<code>\token_if_macro:NNTF</code>	★	<code>\token_if_macro:NNTF</code>	$\langle token \rangle$ $\{\langle true\ code \rangle\}$ $\{\langle false\ code \rangle\}$

---

Updated: 2011-05-23

Tests if the  $\langle token \rangle$  is a  $\text{\TeX}$  macro.

---

<code>\token_if_cs_p:N</code>	★	<code>\token_if_cs_p:N</code>	$\langle token \rangle$
<code>\token_if_cs:NNTF</code>	★	<code>\token_if_cs:NNTF</code>	$\langle token \rangle$ $\{\langle true\ code \rangle\}$ $\{\langle false\ code \rangle\}$

---

Tests if the  $\langle token \rangle$  is a control sequence.

---

<code>\token_if_expandable_p:N</code>	★	<code>\token_if_expandable_p:N</code>	$\langle token \rangle$
<code>\token_if_expandable:NNTF</code>	★	<code>\token_if_expandable:NNTF</code>	$\langle token \rangle$ $\{\langle true\ code \rangle\}$ $\{\langle false\ code \rangle\}$

---

Tests if the  $\langle token \rangle$  is expandable. This test returns  $\langle false \rangle$  for an undefined token.

---

<code>\token_if_long_macro_p:N</code>	★	<code>\token_if_long_macro_p:N</code>	$\langle token \rangle$
<code>\token_if_long_macro:NNTF</code>	★	<code>\token_if_long_macro:NNTF</code>	$\langle token \rangle$ $\{\langle true\ code \rangle\}$ $\{\langle false\ code \rangle\}$

---

Updated: 2012-01-20

Tests if the  $\langle token \rangle$  is a long macro.

---

<code>\token_if_protected_macro_p:N</code>	★	<code>\token_if_protected_macro_p:N</code>	$\langle token \rangle$
<code>\token_if_protected_macro:NNTF</code>	★	<code>\token_if_protected_macro:NNTF</code>	$\langle token \rangle$ $\{\langle true\ code \rangle\}$ $\{\langle false\ code \rangle\}$

---

Updated: 2012-01-20

Tests if the  $\langle token \rangle$  is a protected macro: a macro which is both protected and long will return logical **false**.

---

<code>\token_if_protected_long_macro_p:N</code>	★	<code>\token_if_protected_long_macro_p:N</code>	$\langle token \rangle$
<code>\token_if_protected_long_macro:NNTF</code>	★	<code>\token_if_protected_long_macro:NNTF</code>	$\langle token \rangle$ $\{\langle true\ code \rangle\}$ $\{\langle false\ code \rangle\}$

---

Updated: 2012-01-20

Tests if the  $\langle token \rangle$  is a protected long macro.

---

<code>\token_if_chardef_p:N</code>	★	<code>\token_if_chardef_p:N</code>	$\langle token \rangle$
<code>\token_if_chardef:NNTF</code>	★	<code>\token_if_chardef:NNTF</code>	$\langle token \rangle$ $\{\langle true\ code \rangle\}$ $\{\langle false\ code \rangle\}$

---

Updated: 2012-01-20

Tests if the  $\langle token \rangle$  is defined to be a chardef.

**$\text{\TeX}$ hackers note:** Booleans, boxes and small integer constants are implemented as chardefs.

---

<code>\token_if_mathchardef_p:N</code>	★	<code>\token_if_mathchardef_p:N</code>	$\langle token \rangle$
<code>\token_if_mathchardef:NTF</code>	★	<code>\token_if_mathchardef:NTF</code>	$\langle token \rangle$ $\{\langle true code \rangle\}$ $\{\langle false code \rangle\}$

---

Updated: 2012-01-20

---

Tests if the  $\langle token \rangle$  is defined to be a mathchardef.

---

<code>\token_if_dim_register_p:N</code>	★	<code>\token_if_dim_register_p:N</code>	$\langle token \rangle$
<code>\token_if_dim_register:NTF</code>	★	<code>\token_if_dim_register:NTF</code>	$\langle token \rangle$ $\{\langle true code \rangle\}$ $\{\langle false code \rangle\}$

---

Updated: 2012-01-20

---

Tests if the  $\langle token \rangle$  is defined to be a dimension register.

---

<code>\token_if_int_register_p:N</code>	★	<code>\token_if_int_register_p:N</code>	$\langle token \rangle$
<code>\token_if_int_register:NTF</code>	★	<code>\token_if_int_register:NTF</code>	$\langle token \rangle$ $\{\langle true code \rangle\}$ $\{\langle false code \rangle\}$

---

Updated: 2012-01-20

---

Tests if the  $\langle token \rangle$  is defined to be a integer register.

**T<sub>E</sub>Xhackers note:** Constant integers may be implemented as integer registers, chardefs, or mathchardefs depending on their value.

---

<code>\token_if_skip_register_p:N</code>	★	<code>\token_if_skip_register_p:N</code>	$\langle token \rangle$
<code>\token_if_skip_register:NTF</code>	★	<code>\token_if_skip_register:NTF</code>	$\langle token \rangle$ $\{\langle true code \rangle\}$ $\{\langle false code \rangle\}$

---

Updated: 2012-01-20

---

Tests if the  $\langle token \rangle$  is defined to be a skip register.

---

<code>\token_if_toks_register_p:N</code>	★	<code>\token_if_toks_register_p:N</code>	$\langle token \rangle$
<code>\token_if_toks_register:NTF</code>	★	<code>\token_if_toks_register:NTF</code>	$\langle token \rangle$ $\{\langle true code \rangle\}$ $\{\langle false code \rangle\}$

---

Updated: 2012-01-20

---

Tests if the  $\langle token \rangle$  is defined to be a toks register (not used byL<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X3).

---

<code>\token_if_primitive_p:N</code>	★	<code>\token_if_primitive_p:N</code>	$\langle token \rangle$
<code>\token_if_primitive:NTF</code>	★	<code>\token_if_primitive:NTF</code>	$\langle token \rangle$ $\{\langle true code \rangle\}$ $\{\langle false code \rangle\}$

---

Updated: 2011-05-23

---

Tests if the  $\langle token \rangle$  is an engine primitive.

## 41 Peeking ahead at the next token

There is often a need to look ahead at the next token in the input stream while leaving it in place. This is handled using the “peek” functions. The generic `\peek_after:Nw` is provided along with a family of predefined tests for common cases. As peeking ahead does *not* skip spaces the predefined tests include both a space-respecting and space-skipping version.

---

**\peek\_after:Nw****\peek\_after:Nw**  $\langle function \rangle$   $\langle token \rangle$ 

Locally sets the test variable `\l_peek_token` equal to  $\langle token \rangle$  (as an implicit token, *not* as a token list), and then expands the  $\langle function \rangle$ . The  $\langle token \rangle$  will remain in the input stream as the next item after the  $\langle function \rangle$ . The  $\langle token \rangle$  here may be `\`, `{` or `}` (assuming normal T<sub>E</sub>X category codes), *i.e.* it is not necessarily the next argument which would be grabbed by a normal function.

---

**\peek\_gafter:Nw****\peek\_gafter:Nw**  $\langle function \rangle$   $\langle token \rangle$ 

Globally sets the test variable `\g_peek_token` equal to  $\langle token \rangle$  (as an implicit token, *not* as a token list), and then expands the  $\langle function \rangle$ . The  $\langle token \rangle$  will remain in the input stream as the next item after the  $\langle function \rangle$ . The  $\langle token \rangle$  here may be `\`, `{` or `}` (assuming normal T<sub>E</sub>X category codes), *i.e.* it is not necessarily the next argument which would be grabbed by a normal function.

---

**\l\_peek\_token**Token set by `\peek_after:Nw` and available for testing as described above.

---

**\g\_peek\_token**Token set by `\peek_gafter:Nw` and available for testing as described above.

---

**\peek\_catcode:NTF****\peek\_catcode:NTF**  $\langle test token \rangle$   $\{\langle true code \rangle\}$   $\{\langle false code \rangle\}$ 

---

Updated: 2011-07-02

Tests if the next  $\langle token \rangle$  in the input stream has the same category code as the  $\langle test token \rangle$  (as defined by the test `\token_if_eq_catcode:NNTF`). Spaces are respected by the test and the  $\langle token \rangle$  will be left in the input stream after the  $\langle true code \rangle$  or  $\langle false code \rangle$  (as appropriate to the result of the test).

---

**\peek\_catcode\_ignore\_spaces:NNTF****\peek\_catcode\_ignore\_spaces:NNTF**  $\langle test token \rangle$   $\{\langle true code \rangle\}$   $\{\langle false code \rangle\}$ 

---

Updated: 2011-07-02

Tests if the next  $\langle token \rangle$  in the input stream has the same category code as the  $\langle test token \rangle$  (as defined by the test `\token_if_eq_catcode:NNTF`). Spaces are ignored by the test and the  $\langle token \rangle$  will be left in the input stream after the  $\langle true code \rangle$  or  $\langle false code \rangle$  (as appropriate to the result of the test).

---

**\peek\_catcode\_remove:NNTF****\peek\_catcode\_remove:NNTF**  $\langle test token \rangle$   $\{\langle true code \rangle\}$   $\{\langle false code \rangle\}$ 

---

Updated: 2011-07-02

Tests if the next  $\langle token \rangle$  in the input stream has the same category code as the  $\langle test token \rangle$  (as defined by the test `\token_if_eq_catcode:NNTF`). Spaces are respected by the test and the  $\langle token \rangle$  will be removed from the input stream if the test is true. The function will then place either the  $\langle true code \rangle$  or  $\langle false code \rangle$  in the input stream (as appropriate to the result of the test).

---

<code>\peek_catcode_remove_ignore_spaces:NTF</code>	<code>\peek_catcode_remove_ignore_spaces:NTF &lt;test token&gt; {{true code}} {{false code}}</code>
---	---

---

Updated: 2011-07-02

Tests if the next *<token>* in the input stream has the same category code as the *<test token>* (as defined by the test `\token_if_eq_catcode:NNTF`). Spaces are ignored by the test and the *<token>* will be removed from the input stream if the test is true. The function will then place either the *<true code>* or *<false code>* in the input stream (as appropriate to the result of the test).

---

<code>\peek_charcode:NTF</code>	<code>\peek_charcode:NTF &lt;test token&gt; {{true code}} {{false code}}</code>
---------------------------------	---

---

Updated: 2011-07-02

Tests if the next *<token>* in the input stream has the same character code as the *<test token>* (as defined by the test `\token_if_eq_charcode:NNTF`). Spaces are respected by the test and the *<token>* will be left in the input stream after the *<true code>* or *<false code>* (as appropriate to the result of the test).

---

<code>\peek_charcode_ignore_spaces:NTF</code>	<code>\peek_charcode_ignore_spaces:NTF &lt;test token&gt; {{true code}} {{false code}}</code>
---	---

---

Updated: 2011-07-02

Tests if the next *<token>* in the input stream has the same character code as the *<test token>* (as defined by the test `\token_if_eq_charcode:NNTF`). Spaces are ignored by the test and the *<token>* will be left in the input stream after the *<true code>* or *<false code>* (as appropriate to the result of the test).

---

<code>\peek_charcode_remove:NTF</code>	<code>\peek_charcode_remove:NTF &lt;test token&gt; {{true code}} {{false code}}</code>
--	--

---

Updated: 2011-07-02

Tests if the next *<token>* in the input stream has the same character code as the *<test token>* (as defined by the test `\token_if_eq_charcode:NNTF`). Spaces are respected by the test and the *<token>* will be removed from the input stream if the test is true. The function will then place either the *<true code>* or *<false code>* in the input stream (as appropriate to the result of the test).

---

<code>\peek_charcode_remove_ignore_spaces:NTF</code>	<code>\peek_charcode_remove_ignore_spaces:NTF &lt;test token&gt; {{true code}} {{false code}}</code>
--	--

---

Updated: 2011-07-02

Tests if the next *<token>* in the input stream has the same character code as the *<test token>* (as defined by the test `\token_if_eq_charcode:NNTF`). Spaces are ignored by the test and the *<token>* will be removed from the input stream if the test is true. The function will then place either the *<true code>* or *<false code>* in the input stream (as appropriate to the result of the test).

---

<code>\peek_meaning:NTF</code>	<code>\peek_meaning:NTF &lt;test token&gt; {{true code}} {{false code}}</code>
--------------------------------	--

---

Updated: 2011-07-02

Tests if the next *<token>* in the input stream has the same meaning as the *<test token>* (as defined by the test `\token_if_eq_meaning:NNTF`). Spaces are respected by the test and the *<token>* will be left in the input stream after the *<true code>* or *<false code>* (as appropriate to the result of the test).

---

<code>\peek_meaning_ignore_spaces:NTF</code>	<code>\peek_meaning_ignore_spaces:NTF &lt;test token&gt; {&lt;true code&gt;} {&lt;false code&gt;}</code>
--	--

---

Updated: 2011-07-02

Tests if the next *<token>* in the input stream has the same meaning as the *<test token>* (as defined by the test `\token_if_eq_meaning:NNTF`). Spaces are ignored by the test and the *<token>* will be left in the input stream after the *<true code>* or *<false code>* (as appropriate to the result of the test).

---

<code>\peek_meaning_remove:NTF</code>	<code>\peek_meaning_remove:NTF &lt;test token&gt; {&lt;true code&gt;} {&lt;false code&gt;}</code>
---------------------------------------	---

---

Updated: 2011-07-02

Tests if the next *<token>* in the input stream has the same meaning as the *<test token>* (as defined by the test `\token_if_eq_meaning:NNTF`). Spaces are respected by the test and the *<token>* will be removed from the input stream if the test is true. The function will then place either the *<true code>* or *<false code>* in the input stream (as appropriate to the result of the test).

---

<code>\peek_meaning_remove_ignore_spaces:NTF</code>	<code>\peek_meaning_remove_ignore_spaces:NTF &lt;test token&gt; {&lt;true code&gt;} {&lt;false code&gt;}</code>
---	---

---

Updated: 2011-07-02

Tests if the next *<token>* in the input stream has the same meaning as the *<test token>* (as defined by the test `\token_if_eq_meaning:NNTF`). Spaces are ignored by the test and the *<token>* will be removed from the input stream if the test is true. The function will then place either the *<true code>* or *<false code>* in the input stream (as appropriate to the result of the test).

## 42 Decomposing a macro definition

These functions decompose  $\TeX$  macros into their constituent parts: if the *<token>* passed is not a macro then no decomposition can occur. In the later case, all three functions leave `\scan_stop:` in the input stream.

---

<code>\token_get_arg_spec:N</code> ★	<code>\token_get_arg_spec:N &lt;token&gt;</code>
--------------------------------------	--

---

If the *<token>* is a macro, this function will leave the primitive  $\TeX$  argument specification in input stream as a string of tokens of category code 12 (with spaces having category code 10). Thus for example for a token `\next` defined by

```
\cs_set:Npn \next #1#2 { x #1 y #2 }
```

will leave `#1#2` in the input stream. If the *<token>* is not a macro then `\scan_stop:` will be left in the input stream

**$\TeX$ hackers note:** If the arg spec. contains the string `->`, then the `spec` function will produce incorrect results.

---

<code>\token_get_replacement_spec:N</code>	★	<code>\token_get_replacement_spec:N &lt;token&gt;</code>
--	---	--

---

If the  $\langle token \rangle$  is a macro, this function will leave the replacement text in input stream as a string of tokens of category code 12 (with spaces having category code 10). Thus for example for a token `\next` defined by

`\cs_set:Npn \next #1#2 { x #1~y #2 }`

will leave `x#1 y#2` in the input stream. If the  $\langle token \rangle$  is not a macro then `\scan_stop:` will be left in the input stream

---

<code>\token_get_prefix_spec:N</code>	★	<code>\token_get_prefix_spec:N &lt;token&gt;</code>
---------------------------------------	---	---

---

If the  $\langle token \rangle$  is a macro, this function will leave the  $\text{\TeX}$  prefixes applicable in input stream as a string of tokens of category code 12 (with spaces having category code 10). Thus for example for a token `\next` defined by

`\cs_set:Npn \next #1#2 { x #1~y #2 }`

will leave `\long` in the input stream. If the  $\langle token \rangle$  is not a macro then `\scan_stop:` will be left in the input stream

## 43 Experimental token functions

---

<code>\char_set_active:Npn</code>	<code>\char_set_active:Npn &lt;char&gt; &lt;parameters&gt; {&lt;code&gt;}</code>
-----------------------------------	--

---

`\char_set_active:Npx`

New: 2011-12-27

Makes  $\langle char \rangle$  an active character to expand to  $\langle code \rangle$  as replacement text. Within the  $\langle code \rangle$ , the  $\langle parameters \rangle$  (`#1`, `#2`, *etc.*) will be replaced by those absorbed. The  $\langle char \rangle$  is made active within the current  $\text{\TeX}$  group level, and the definition is also local.

---

<code>\char_gset_active:Npn</code>	<code>\char_gset_active:Npn &lt;char&gt; &lt;parameters&gt; {&lt;code&gt;}</code>
------------------------------------	---

---

`\char_gset_active:Npx`

New: 2011-12-27

Makes  $\langle char \rangle$  an active character to expand to  $\langle code \rangle$  as replacement text. Within the  $\langle code \rangle$ , the  $\langle parameters \rangle$  (`#1`, `#2`, *etc.*) will be replaced by those absorbed. The  $\langle char \rangle$  is made active within the current  $\text{\TeX}$  group level, but the definition is global. This function is therefore suited to cases where an active character definition should be applied only in some context (where the  $\langle char \rangle$  is again made active).

---

<code>\char_set_active_eq:NN</code>	<code>\char_set_active_eq:NN &lt;char&gt; &lt;function&gt;</code>
-------------------------------------	---

---

New: 2011-12-27

Makes  $\langle char \rangle$  an active character equivalent in meaning to the  $\langle function \rangle$  (which may itself be an active character). The  $\langle char \rangle$  is made active within the current  $\text{\TeX}$  group level, and the definition is also local.

<hr/> <b><code>\char_gset_active_eq:NN</code></b> <hr/>	<b><code>\char_gset_active_eq:NN</code></b> $\langle char \rangle$ $\langle function \rangle$
<hr/> New: 2011-12-27 <hr/>	Makes $\langle char \rangle$ an active character equivalent in meaning to the $\langle function \rangle$ (which may itself be an active character). The $\langle char \rangle$ is made active within the current $\text{\TeX}$ group level, but the definition is global. This function is therefore suited to cases where an active character definition should be applied only in some context (where the $\langle char \rangle$ is again made active).
<hr/> <b><code>\peek_N_typeTF</code></b> <hr/>	<b><code>\peek_N_type:TF</code></b> $\{\langle true\ code \rangle\}$ $\{\langle false\ code \rangle\}$
<hr/> New: 2011-08-14 <hr/>	Tests if the next $\langle token \rangle$ in the input stream can be safely grabbed as an N-type argument. The test will be $\langle false \rangle$ if the next $\langle token \rangle$ is either an explicit or implicit begin-group or end-group token (with any character code), or an explicit or implicit space character (with character code 32 and category code 10), and $\langle true \rangle$ in all other cases. Note that a $\langle true \rangle$ result ensures that the next $\langle token \rangle$ is a valid N-type argument. However, if the next $\langle token \rangle$ is for instance <code>\c_space_token</code> , the test will take the $\langle false \rangle$ branch, even though the next $\langle token \rangle$ is in fact a valid N-type argument. The $\langle token \rangle$ will be left in the input stream after the $\langle true\ code \rangle$ or $\langle false\ code \rangle$ (as appropriate to the result of the test).



## Part IX

# The l3int package

## Integers

Calculation and comparison of integer values can be carried out using literal numbers, `int` registers, constants and integers stored in token list variables. The standard operators `+`, `-`, `/` and `*` and parentheses can be used within such expressions to carry arithmetic operations. This module carries out these functions on *integer expressions* (“`int expr`”).

### 44 Integer expressions

---

`\int_eval:n` ★ `\int_eval:n {⟨integer expression⟩}`

---

Evaluates the *⟨integer expression⟩*, expanding any integer and token list variables within the *⟨expression⟩* to their content (without requiring `\int_use:N/\tl_use:N`) and applying the standard mathematical rules. For example both

```
\int_eval:n { 5 + 4 * 3 - ( 3 + 4 * 5 ) }
```

and

```
\tl_new:N \l_my_tl
\tl_set:Nn \l_my_tl { 5 }
\int_new:N \l_my_int
\int_set:Nn \l_my_int { 4 }
\int_eval:n { \l_my_tl + \l_my_int * 3 - ( 3 + 4 * 5 ) }
```

both evaluate to  $-6$ . The *⟨integer expression⟩* may contain the operators `+`, `-`, `*` and `/`, along with parenthesis `(` and `)`. After two expansions, `\int_eval:n` yields a *⟨integer denotation⟩* which is left in the input stream. This is *not* an *⟨internal integer⟩*, and therefore requires suitable termination if used in a TeX-style integer assignment.

---

`\int_abs:n` ★ `\int_abs:n {⟨integer expression⟩}`

---

Evaluates the *⟨integer expression⟩* as described for `\int_eval:n` and leaves the absolute value of the result in the input stream as an *⟨integer denotation⟩* after two expansions.

---

`\int_div_round:nn` ★ `\int_div_round:nn {⟨intexpr1⟩} {⟨intexpr2⟩}`

---

Evaluates the two *⟨integer expressions⟩* as described earlier, then calculates the result of dividing the first value by the second, rounding any remainder. Ties are rounded away from zero. Note that this is identical to using `/` directly in an *⟨integer expression⟩*. The result is left in the input stream as a *⟨integer denotation⟩* after two expansions.

---

<code>\int_div_truncate:nn</code> ★	<code>\int_div_truncate:nn {\langle integer \rangle_1} {\langle integer \rangle_2}</code>
-------------------------------------	---

---

Evaluates the two  $\langle integer expressions \rangle$  as described earlier, then calculates the result of dividing the first value by the second, truncating any remainder. Note that division using / rounds the result. The result is left in the input stream as a  $\langle integer denotation \rangle$  after two expansions.

---

<code>\int_max:nn</code> ★	<code>\int_max:nn {\langle integer \rangle_1} {\langle integer \rangle_2}</code>
<code>\int_min:nn</code> ★	<code>\int_min:nn {\langle integer \rangle_1} {\langle integer \rangle_2}</code>

---

Evaluates the  $\langle integer expressions \rangle$  as described for `\int_eval:n` and leaves either the larger or smaller value in the input stream as an  $\langle integer denotation \rangle$  after two expansions.

---

<code>\int_mod:nn</code> ★	<code>\int_mod:nn {\langle integer \rangle_1} {\langle integer \rangle_2}</code>
----------------------------	--

---

Evaluates the two  $\langle integer expressions \rangle$  as described earlier, then calculates the integer remainder of dividing the first expression by the second. This is left in the input stream as an  $\langle integer denotation \rangle$  after two expansions.

## 45 Creating and initialising integers

---

<code>\int_new:N</code>	<code>\int_new:N \langle integer \rangle</code>
<code>\int_new:c</code>	

---

Creates a new  $\langle integer \rangle$  or raises an error if the name is already taken. The declaration is global. The  $\langle integer \rangle$  will initially be equal to 0.

---

<code>\int_const:Nn</code>	<code>\int_const:Nn \langle integer \rangle {\langle integer expression \rangle}</code>
<code>\int_const:cn</code>	

---

Creates a new constant  $\langle integer \rangle$  or raises an error if the name is already taken. The value of the  $\langle integer \rangle$  will be set globally to the  $\langle integer expression \rangle$ .

Updated: 2011-10-22

---

<code>\int_zero:N</code>	<code>\int_zero:N \langle integer \rangle</code>
<code>\int_zero:c</code>	
<code>\int_gzero:N</code>	
<code>\int_gzero:c</code>	

---

Sets  $\langle integer \rangle$  to 0.

---

<code>\int_zero_new:N</code>	<code>\int_zero_new:N \langle integer \rangle</code>
<code>\int_zero_new:c</code>	
<code>\int_gzero_new:N</code>	
<code>\int_gzero_new:c</code>	

---

Ensures that the  $\langle integer \rangle$  exists globally by applying `\int_new:N` if necessary, then applies `\int_(g)zero:N` to leave the  $\langle integer \rangle$  set to zero.

New: 2011-12-13

---

<code>\int_set_eq:NN</code>	<code>\int_set_eq:NN \langle integer1 \rangle \langle integer2 \rangle</code>
<code>\int_set_eq:(cN Nc cc)</code>	
<code>\int_gset_eq:NN</code>	
<code>\int_gset_eq:(cN Nc cc)</code>	

---

Sets the content of  $\langle integer1 \rangle$  equal to that of  $\langle integer2 \rangle$ .

## 46 Setting and incrementing integers

<code>\int_add:Nn</code>	<code>\int_add:Nn &lt;integer&gt; {&lt;integer expression&gt;}</code>
<code>\int_add:cn</code>	
<code>\int_gadd:Nn</code>	Adds the result of the <i>&lt;integer expression&gt;</i> to the current content of the <i>&lt;integer&gt;</i> .
<code>\int_gadd:cn</code>	
Updated: 2011-10-22	
<code>\int_decr:N</code>	<code>\int_decr:N &lt;integer&gt;</code>
<code>\int_decr:c</code>	
<code>\int_gdecr:N</code>	Decreases the value stored in <i>&lt;integer&gt;</i> by 1.
<code>\int_gdecr:c</code>	
<code>\int_incr:N</code>	<code>\int_incr:N &lt;integer&gt;</code>
<code>\int_incr:c</code>	
<code>\int_gincr:N</code>	Increases the value stored in <i>&lt;integer&gt;</i> by 1.
<code>\int_gincr:c</code>	
<code>\int_set:Nn</code>	<code>\int_set:Nn &lt;integer&gt; {&lt;integer expression&gt;}</code>
<code>\int_set:cn</code>	
<code>\int_gset:Nn</code>	Sets <i>&lt;integer&gt;</i> to the value of <i>&lt;integer expression&gt;</i> , which must evaluate to an integer (as described for <code>\int_eval:n</code> ).
<code>\int_gset:cn</code>	
Updated: 2011-10-22	
<code>\int_sub:Nn</code>	<code>\int_sub:Nn &lt;integer&gt; {&lt;integer expression&gt;}</code>
<code>\int_sub:cn</code>	
<code>\int_gsub:Nn</code>	Subtracts the result of the <i>&lt;integer expression&gt;</i> to the current content of the <i>&lt;integer&gt;</i> .
<code>\int_gsub:cn</code>	
Updated: 2011-10-22	

## 47 Using integers

<code>\int_use:N</code>	★ <code>\int_use:N &lt;integer&gt;</code>
<code>\int_use:c</code>	★
Updated: 2011-10-22	

Recovers the content of a *<integer>* and places it directly in the input stream. An error will be raised if the variable does not exist or if it is invalid. Can be omitted in places where a *<integer>* is required (such as in the first and third arguments of `\int_compare:nNnTF`).

**T<sub>E</sub>Xhackers note:** `\int_use:N` is the T<sub>E</sub>X primitive `\the`: this is one of several L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X3 names for this primitive.

## 48 Integer expression conditionals

---

<code>\int_compare_p:nNn</code> ★	<code>\int_compare_p:nNn {⟨integer expression⟩} ⟨relation⟩ {⟨integer expression⟩}</code>
<code>\int_compare:nNnTF</code> ★	<code>\int_compare:nNnTF {⟨integer expression⟩} ⟨relation⟩ {⟨integer expression⟩}</code> <code>{⟨true code⟩} {⟨false code⟩}</code>

---

This function first evaluates each of the *⟨integer expressions⟩* as described for `\int_eval:n`. The two results are then compared using the *⟨relation⟩*:

Equal	=
Greater than	>
Less than	<

---

<code>\int_compare_p:n</code> ★	<code>\int_compare_p:n { ⟨integer expression⟩ ⟨relation⟩ ⟨integer expression⟩ }</code>
<code>\int_compare:nTF</code> ★	<code>\int_compare:nTF { ⟨integer expression⟩ ⟨relation⟩ ⟨integer expression⟩ }</code> <code>{⟨true code⟩} {⟨false code⟩}</code>

---

This function first evaluates each of the *⟨integer expressions⟩* as described for `\int_eval:n`. The two results are then compared using the *⟨relation⟩*:

Equal	= or ==
Greater than or equal to	>=
Greater than	>
Less than or equal to	<=
Less than	<
Not equal	!=

---

<code>\int_if_even_p:n</code> ★	<code>\int_if_odd_p:n {⟨integer expression⟩}</code>
<code>\int_if_even:nTF</code> ★	<code>\int_if_odd:nTF {⟨integer expression⟩}</code>
<code>\int_if_odd_p:n</code> ★	<code>{⟨true code⟩} {⟨false code⟩}</code>
<code>\int_if_odd:nTF</code> ★	

---

This function first evaluates the *⟨integer expression⟩* as described for `\int_eval:n`. It then evaluates if this is odd or even, as appropriate.

## 49 Integer expression loops

---

<code>\int_do_while:nNnn</code> ☆	<code>\int_do_while:nNnn {⟨integer expression⟩} ⟨relation⟩ {⟨integer expression⟩} {⟨code⟩}</code>
-----------------------------------	---

---

Evaluates the relationship between the two *⟨integer expressions⟩* as described for `\int_compare:nNnTF`, and then places the *⟨code⟩* in the input stream if the *⟨relation⟩* is **true**. After the *⟨code⟩* has been processed by  $\text{\TeX}$  the test will be repeated, and a loop will occur until the test is **false**.

<hr/> <hr/> <code>\int_do_until:nNnn</code> ☆	<code>\int_do_until:nNnn</code> <code>{\langle intexpr_1 \rangle \langle relation \rangle {\langle intexpr_2 \rangle} {\langle code \rangle}}</code> <p>Evaluates the relationship between the two <i>integer expressions</i> as described for <code>\int_compare:nNnTF</code>, and then places the <i>code</i> in the input stream if the <i>relation</i> is <b>false</b>. After the <i>code</i> has been processed by T<sub>E</sub>X the test will be repeated, and a loop will occur until the test is <b>true</b>.</p>
<hr/> <hr/> <code>\int_until_do:nNnn</code> ☆	<code>\int_until_do:nNnn</code> <code>{\langle intexpr_1 \rangle \langle relation \rangle {\langle intexpr_2 \rangle} {\langle code \rangle}}</code> <p>Places the <i>code</i> in the input stream for T<sub>E</sub>X to process, and then evaluates the relationship between the two <i>integer expressions</i> as described for <code>\int_compare:nNnTF</code>. If the test is <b>false</b> then the <i>code</i> will be inserted into the input stream again and a loop will occur until the <i>relation</i> is <b>true</b>.</p>
<hr/> <hr/> <code>\int_while_do:nNnn</code> ☆	<code>\int_while_do:nNnn</code> <code>{\langle intexpr_1 \rangle \langle relation \rangle {\langle intexpr_2 \rangle} {\langle code \rangle}}</code> <p>Places the <i>code</i> in the input stream for T<sub>E</sub>X to process, and then evaluates the relationship between the two <i>integer expressions</i> as described for <code>\int_compare:nNnTF</code>. If the test is <b>true</b> then the <i>code</i> will be inserted into the input stream again and a loop will occur until the <i>relation</i> is <b>false</b>.</p>
<hr/> <hr/> <code>\int_do_while:nn</code> ☆	<code>\int_do_while:nn</code> <code>{ \langle intexpr_1 \rangle \langle relation \rangle \langle intexpr_2 \rangle } {\langle code \rangle}</code> <p>Evaluates the relationship between the two <i>integer expressions</i> as described for <code>\int_compare:nTF</code>, and then places the <i>code</i> in the input stream if the <i>relation</i> is <b>true</b>. After the <i>code</i> has been processed by T<sub>E</sub>X the test will be repeated, and a loop will occur until the test is <b>false</b>.</p>
<hr/> <hr/> <code>\int_do_until:nn</code> ☆	<code>\int_do_until:nn</code> <code>{ \langle intexpr_1 \rangle \langle relation \rangle \langle intexpr_2 \rangle } {\langle code \rangle}</code> <p>Evaluates the relationship between the two <i>integer expressions</i> as described for <code>\int_compare:nTF</code>, and then places the <i>code</i> in the input stream if the <i>relation</i> is <b>false</b>. After the <i>code</i> has been processed by T<sub>E</sub>X the test will be repeated, and a loop will occur until the test is <b>true</b>.</p>
<hr/> <hr/> <code>\int_until_do:nn</code> ☆	<code>\int_until_do:nn</code> <code>{ \langle intexpr_1 \rangle \langle relation \rangle \langle intexpr_2 \rangle } {\langle code \rangle}</code> <p>Places the <i>code</i> in the input stream for T<sub>E</sub>X to process, and then evaluates the relationship between the two <i>integer expressions</i> as described for <code>\int_compare:nTF</code>. If the test is <b>false</b> then the <i>code</i> will be inserted into the input stream again and a loop will occur until the <i>relation</i> is <b>true</b>.</p>

---

<code>\int_while_do:nn</code> ☆	<code>\int_while_do:nn { &lt;intexpr1&gt; &lt;relation&gt; &lt;intexpr2&gt; } {&lt;code&gt;}</code>
---------------------------------	---

---

Places the *<code>* in the input stream for T<sub>E</sub>X to process, and then evaluates the relationship between the two *<integer expressions>* as described for `\int_compare:nTF`. If the test is **true** then the *<code>* will be inserted into the input stream again and a loop will occur until the *<relation>* is **false**.

## 50 Formatting integers

Integers can be placed into the output stream with formatting. These conversions apply to any integer expressions.

---

<code>\int_to_arabic:n</code> ★	<code>\int_to_arabic:n {&lt;integer expression&gt;}</code>
---------------------------------	--

---

Updated: 2011-10-22

Places the value of the *<integer expression>* in the input stream as digits, with category code 12 (other).

---

<code>\int_to_alph:n</code> ★	<code>\int_to_alph:n {&lt;integer expression&gt;}</code>
<code>\int_to_Alph:n</code> ★	Evaluates the <i>&lt;integer expression&gt;</i> and converts the result into a series of letters, which are then left in the input stream. The conversion rule uses the 26 letters of the English alphabet, in order, adding letters when necessary to increase the total possible range of representable numbers. Thus

---

Updated: 2011-09-17

`\int_to_alph:n { 1 }`

places **a** in the input stream,

`\int_to_alph:n { 26 }`

is represented as **z** and

`\int_to_alph:n { 27 }`

is converted to **aa**. For conversions using other alphabets, use `\int_convert_to_symbols:nnn` to define an alphabet-specific function. The basic `\int_to_alph:n` and `\int_to_Alph:n` functions should not be modified.

---

`\int_to_symbols:nnn` ★  
Updated: 2011-09-17

---

`\int_to_symbols:nnn`  
 $\{\langle integer\ expression \rangle\} \{\langle total\ symbols \rangle\}$   
 $\langle value\ to\ symbol\ mapping \rangle$

This is the low-level function for conversion of an  $\langle integer\ expression \rangle$  into a symbolic form (which will often be letters). The  $\langle total\ symbols \rangle$  available should be given as an integer expression. Values are actually converted to symbols according to the  $\langle value\ to\ symbol\ mapping \rangle$ . This should be given as  $\langle total\ symbols \rangle$  pairs of entries, a number and the appropriate symbol. Thus the `\int_to_alph:n` function is defined as

```
\cs_new:Npn \int_to_alph:n #1
{
  \int_convert_to_symbols:nnn {#1} { 26 }
  {
    { 1 } { a }
    { 2 } { b }
    ...
    { 26 } { z }
  }
}
```

---

`\int_to_binary:n` ★  
Updated: 2011-09-17

---

`\int_to_binary:n`  $\{\langle integer\ expression \rangle\}$

Calculates the value of the  $\langle integer\ expression \rangle$  and places the binary representation of the result in the input stream.

---

`\int_to_hexadecimal:n` ★  
Updated: 2011-09-17

---

`\int_to_hexadecimal:n`  $\{\langle integer\ expression \rangle\}$

Calculates the value of the  $\langle integer\ expression \rangle$  and places the hexadecimal (base 16) representation of the result in the input stream. Upper case letters are used for digits beyond 9.

---

`\int_to_octal:n` ★  
Updated: 2011-09-17

---

`\int_to_octal:n`  $\{\langle integer\ expression \rangle\}$

Calculates the value of the  $\langle integer\ expression \rangle$  and places the octal (base 8) representation of the result in the input stream.

---

`\int_to_base:nn` ★  
Updated: 2011-09-17

---

`\int_to_base:nn`  $\{\langle integer\ expression \rangle\} \{\langle base \rangle\}$

Calculates the value of the  $\langle integer\ expression \rangle$  and converts it into the appropriate representation in the  $\langle base \rangle$ ; the later may be given as an integer expression. For bases greater than 10 the higher “digits” are represented by the upper case letters from the English alphabet. The maximum  $\langle base \rangle$  value is 36.

**T<sub>E</sub>Xhackers note:** This is a generic version of `\int_to_binary:n`, etc.

---

<code>\int_to_roman:n</code> ☆	<code>\int_to_roman:n</code> { <i>&lt;integer expression&gt;</i> }
--------------------------------	--

<code>\int_to_Roman:n</code> ☆
--------------------------------

---

Updated: 2011-10-22
---------------------

Places the value of the *<integer expression>* in the input stream as Roman numerals, either lower case (`\int_to_roman:n`) or upper case (`\int_to_Roman:n`). The Roman numerals are letters with category code 11 (letter).

## 51 Converting from other formats to integers

---

<code>\int_from_alph:n</code> ☆	<code>\int_from_alph:n</code> { <i>&lt;letters&gt;</i> }
---------------------------------	--

Converts the *<letters>* into the integer (base 10) representation and leaves this in the input stream. The *<letters>* are treated using the English alphabet only, with “a” equal to 1 through to “z” equal to 26. Either lower or upper case letters may be used. This is the inverse function of `\int_to_alph:n`.

---

<code>\int_from_binary:n</code> ☆	<code>\int_from_binary:n</code> { <i>&lt;binary number&gt;</i> }
-----------------------------------	--

Converts the *<binary number>* into the integer (base 10) representation and leaves this in the input stream.

---

<code>\int_from_hexadecimal:n</code> ☆	<code>\int_from_hexadecimal:n</code> { <i>&lt;hexadecimal number&gt;</i> }
--	--

Converts the *<hexadecimal number>* into the integer (base 10) representation and leaves this in the input stream. Digits greater than 9 may be represented in the *<hexadecimal number>* by upper or lower case letters.

---

<code>\int_from_octal:n</code> ☆	<code>\int_from_octal:n</code> { <i>&lt;octal number&gt;</i> }
----------------------------------	--

Converts the *<octal number>* into the integer (base 10) representation and leaves this in the input stream.

---

<code>\int_from_roman:n</code> ☆	<code>\int_from_roman:n</code> { <i>&lt;roman numeral&gt;</i> }
----------------------------------	---

Converts the *<roman numeral>* into the integer (base 10) representation and leaves this in the input stream. The *<roman numeral>* may be in upper or lower case; if the numeral is not valid then the resulting value will be  $-1$ .

---

<code>\int_from_base:nn</code> ☆	<code>\int_from_base:nn</code> { <i>&lt;number&gt;</i> } { <i>&lt;base&gt;</i> }
----------------------------------	--

Converts the *<number>* in *<base>* into the appropriate value in base 10. The *<number>* should consist of digits and letters (either lower or upper case), plus optionally a leading sign. The maximum *<base>* value is 36.



## 52 Viewing integers

<hr/>	
<code>\int_show:N</code>	<code>\int_show:N</code> $\langle integer \rangle$
<code>\int_show:c</code>	Displays the value of the $\langle integer \rangle$ on the terminal.
<hr/>	
<code>\int_show:n</code>	<code>\int_show:n</code> $\langle integer expression \rangle$
<code>New: 2011-11-22</code>	Displays the result of evaluating the $\langle integer expression \rangle$ on the terminal.
<hr/>	

## 53 Constant integers

<hr/>	
<code>\c_minus_one</code>	Integer values used with primitive tests and assignments: self-terminating nature makes these more convenient and faster than literal numbers.
<code>\c_zero</code>	
<code>\c_one</code>	
<code>\c_two</code>	
<code>\c_three</code>	
<code>\c_four</code>	
<code>\c_five</code>	
<code>\c_six</code>	
<code>\c_seven</code>	
<code>\c_eight</code>	
<code>\c_nine</code>	
<code>\c_ten</code>	
<code>\c_eleven</code>	
<code>\c_twelve</code>	
<code>\c_thirteen</code>	
<code>\c_fourteen</code>	
<code>\c_fifteen</code>	
<code>\c_sixteen</code>	
<code>\c_thirty_two</code>	
<code>\c_one_hundred</code>	
<code>\c_two_hundred_fifty_five</code>	
<code>\c_two_hundred_fifty_six</code>	
<code>\c_one_thousand</code>	
<code>\c_ten_thousand</code>	
<hr/>	
<code>\c_max_int</code>	The maximum value that can be stored as an integer.
<hr/>	
<code>\c_max_register_int</code>	Maximum number of registers.
<hr/>	

## 54 Scratch integers

<hr/> <hr/>	
<code>\l_tmpa_int</code>	Scratch integer for local assignment. These are never used by the kernel code, and so are safe for use with any L <sup>A</sup> T <sub>E</sub> X3-defined function. However, they may be overwritten by other non-kernel code and so should only be used for short-term storage.
<code>\l_tmpb_int</code>	
<code>\l_tmpc_int</code>	
<hr/> <hr/>	
<code>\g_tmpa_int</code>	Scratch integer for global assignment. These are never used by the kernel code, and so are safe for use with any L <sup>A</sup> T <sub>E</sub> X3-defined function. However, they may be overwritten by other non-kernel code and so should only be used for short-term storage.
<code>\g_tmpb_int</code>	

## 55 Internal functions

<hr/> <hr/>	
<code>\int_get_digits:n</code> ★	<code>\int_get_digits:n</code> $\langle value \rangle$
	Parses the $\langle value \rangle$ to leave the absolute $\langle value \rangle$ in the input stream. This may therefore be used to remove multiple sign tokens from the $\langle value \rangle$ (which may be symbolic).
<hr/> <hr/>	
<code>\int_get_sign:n</code> ☆	<code>\int_get_sign:n</code> $\langle value \rangle$
	Parses the $\langle value \rangle$ to leave a single sign token (either + or -) in the input stream. This may therefore be used to sanitise sign tokens from the $\langle value \rangle$ (which may be symbolic).
<hr/> <hr/>	
<code>\int_to_letter:n</code> ★	<code>\int_to_letter:n</code> $\langle integer\ value \rangle$
Updated: 2011-09-17	For $\langle integer\ values \rangle$ from 0 to 9, leaves the $\langle value \rangle$ in the input stream unchanged. For $\langle integer\ values \rangle$ from 10 to 35, leaves the appropriate upper case letter (from the standard English alphabet) in the input stream: for example, 10 is converted to A, 11 to B, <i>etc.</i>
<hr/> <hr/>	
<code>\int_to_roman:w</code> ★	<code>\int_to_roman:w</code> $\langle integer \rangle$ $\langle space \rangle$ or $\langle non-expandable\ token \rangle$
	Converts $\langle integer \rangle$ to it lower case Roman representation. Expansion ends when a space or non-expandable token is found. Note that this function produces a string of letters with category code 12 and that protected functions <i>are</i> expanded by this process. Negative $\langle integer \rangle$ values result in no output, although the function does not terminate expansion until a suitable endpoint is found in the same way as for positive numbers.

**T<sub>E</sub>Xhackers note:** This is the T<sub>E</sub>X primitive `\romannumeral` renamed.

---

<code>\if_num:w</code>	★	<code>\if_num:w &lt;integer1&gt; &lt;relation&gt; &lt;integer2&gt;</code>
<code>\if_int_compare:w</code>	★	<code>&lt;true code&gt;</code>

---

`\else:`  
`<false code>`  
`\fi:`

Compare two integers using `<relation>`, which must be one of =, < or > with category code 12. The `\else:` branch is optional.

**T<sub>E</sub>Xhackers note:** These are both names for the T<sub>E</sub>X primitive `\ifnum`.

---

<code>\if_case:w</code>	★	<code>\if_case:w &lt;integer&gt; &lt;case0&gt;</code>
<code>\or</code>	★	<code>\or: &lt;case1&gt;</code>

---

`\or: ...`  
`\else: <default>`  
`\fi:`

Selects a case to execute based on the value of the `<integer>`. The first case (`<case0>`) is executed if `<integer>` is 0, the second (`<case1>`) if the `<integer>` is 1, *etc.* The `<integer>` may be a literal, a constant or an integer expression (*e.g.* using `\int_eval:n`).

**T<sub>E</sub>Xhackers note:** These are the T<sub>E</sub>X primitives `\ifcase` and `\or`.

---

<code>\int_value:w</code>	★	<code>\int_value:w &lt;integer&gt;</code>
		<code>\int_value:w &lt;tokens&gt; &lt;optional space&gt;</code>

---

Expands `<tokens>` until an `<integer>` is formed. One space may be gobbled in the process.

**T<sub>E</sub>Xhackers note:** This is the T<sub>E</sub>X primitive `\number`.

---

<code>\int_eval:w</code>	★	<code>\int_eval:w &lt;intexpr&gt; \int_eval_end:</code>
<code>\int_eval_end</code>	★	

---

Evaluates `<integer expression>` as described for `\int_eval:n`. The evaluation stops when an unexpandable token which is not a valid part of an integer is read or when `\int_eval_end:` is reached. The latter is gobbled by the scanner mechanism: `\int_eval_end:` itself is unexpandable but used correctly the entire construct is expandable.

**T<sub>E</sub>Xhackers note:** This is the  $\varepsilon$ -T<sub>E</sub>X primitive `\numexpr`.

---

<code>\if_int_odd:w</code>	★	<code>\if_int_odd:w &lt;tokens&gt; &lt;optional space&gt;</code>
		<code>&lt;true code&gt;</code>

---

`\else:`  
`<true code>`  
`\fi:`

Expands `<tokens>` until a non-numeric token or a space is found, and tests whether the resulting `<integer>` is odd. If so, `<true code>` is executed. The `\else:` branch is optional.

**T<sub>E</sub>Xhackers note:** This is the T<sub>E</sub>X primitive `\ifodd`.

## Part X

# The l3skip package

## Dimensions and skips

L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X3 provides two general length variables: `dim` and `skip`. Lengths stored as `dim` variables have a fixed length, whereas `skip` lengths have a rubber (stretch/shrink) component. In addition, the `muskip` type is available for use in math mode: this is a special form of `skip` where the lengths involved are determined by the current math font (in  $\mu$ ). There are common features in the creation and setting of length variables, but for clarity the functions are grouped by variable type.

## 56 Creating and initialising dim variables

---

```
\dim_new:N  
\dim_new:c
```

---

```
\dim_new:N <dimension>
```

Creates a new  $\langle dimension \rangle$  or raises an error if the name is already taken. The declaration is global. The  $\langle dimension \rangle$  will initially be equal to 0pt.

---

```
\dim_zero:N  
\dim_zero:c  
\dim_gzero:N  
\dim_gzero:c
```

---

```
\dim_zero:N <dimension>
```

Sets  $\langle dimension \rangle$  to 0pt.

---

```
\dim_zero_new:N  
\dim_zero_new:c  
\dim_gzero_new:N  
\dim_gzero_new:c
```

---

```
\dim_zero_new:N <dimension>
```

Ensures that the  $\langle dimension \rangle$  exists globally by applying `\dim_new:N` if necessary, then applies `\dim_(g)zero:N` to leave the  $\langle dimension \rangle$  set to zero.

New: 2012-01-07

---

## 57 Setting dim variables

---

```
\dim_add:Nn  
\dim_add:cn  
\dim_gadd:Nn  
\dim_gadd:cn
```

---

```
\dim_add:Nn <dimension> {<dimension expression>}
```

Adds the result of the  $\langle dimension expression \rangle$  to the current content of the  $\langle dimension \rangle$ .

Updated: 2011-10-22

---

---

<code>\dim_set:Nn</code>	<code>\dim_set:Nn &lt;dimension&gt; {&lt;dimension expression&gt;}</code>
<code>\dim_set:cn</code>	
<code>\dim_gset:Nn</code>	Sets $\langle dimension \rangle$ to the value of $\langle dimension expression \rangle$ , which must evaluate to a length with units.
<code>\dim_gset:cn</code>	
<hr/> Updated: 2011-10-22 <hr/>	

---

<code>\dim_set_eq:NN</code>	<code>\dim_set_eq:NN &lt;dimension1&gt; &lt;dimension2&gt;</code>
<code>\dim_set_eq:(cN Nc cc)</code>	
<code>\dim_gset_eq:NN</code>	Sets the content of $\langle dimension1 \rangle$ equal to that of $\langle dimension2 \rangle$ .
<code>\dim_gset_eq:(cN Nc cc)</code>	

---



---

<code>\dim_set_max:Nn</code>	<code>\dim_set_max:Nn &lt;dimension&gt; {&lt;dimension expression&gt;}</code>
<code>\dim_set_max:cn</code>	
<code>\dim_gset_max:Nn</code>	Compares the current value of the $\langle dimension \rangle$ with that of the $\langle dimension expression \rangle$ , and sets the $\langle dimension \rangle$ to the larger of these two value.
<code>\dim_gset_max:cn</code>	
<hr/> Updated: 2012-02-06 <hr/>	

---

<code>\dim_set_min:Nn</code>	<code>\dim_set_min:Nn &lt;dimension&gt; {&lt;dimension expression&gt;}</code>
<code>\dim_set_min:cn</code>	
<code>\dim_gset_min:Nn</code>	Compares the current value of the $\langle dimension \rangle$ with that of the $\langle dimension expression \rangle$ , and sets the $\langle dimension \rangle$ to the smaller of these two value.
<code>\dim_gset_min:cn</code>	
<hr/> Updated: 2012-02-06 <hr/>	

---

<code>\dim_sub:Nn</code>	<code>\dim_sub:Nn &lt;dimension&gt; {&lt;dimension expression&gt;}</code>
<code>\dim_sub:cn</code>	
<code>\dim_gsub:Nn</code>	Subtracts the result of the $\langle dimension expression \rangle$ to the current content of the $\langle dimension \rangle$ .
<code>\dim_gsub:cn</code>	
<hr/> Updated: 2011-10-22 <hr/>	

## 58 Utilities for dimension calculations

---

<code>\dim_abs:n</code> ★	<code>\dim_abs:n {&lt;dimexpr&gt;}</code>
<hr/> Updated: 2011-10-22 <hr/>	Converts the $\langle dimexpr \rangle$ to its absolute value, leaving the result in the input stream as an $\langle dimension denotation \rangle$ .

---

<code>\dim_ratio:nn</code> ★	<code>\dim_ratio:nn {&lt;dimexpr<sub>1</sub>&gt;} {&lt;dimexpr<sub>2</sub>&gt;}</code>
------------------------------	--

---

Updated: 2011-10-22      Parses the two *<dimension expressions>* and converts the ratio of the two to a form suitable for use inside a *<dimension expression>*. This ratio is then left in the input stream, allowing syntax such as

```
\dim_set:Nn \l_my_dim
{ 10 pt * \dim_ratio:nn { 5 pt } { 10 pt } }
```

The output of `\dim_ratio:nn` on full expansion is a ration expression between two integers, with all distances converted to scaled points. Thus

```
\tl_set:Nx \l_my_tl { \dim_ratio:nn { 5 pt } { 10 pt } }
\tl_show:N \l_my_tl
```

will display 327680/655360 on the terminal.

## 59 Dimension expression conditionals

---

<code>\dim_compare_p:nNn</code> ★	<code>\dim_compare_p:nNn {&lt;dimexpr<sub>1</sub>&gt;} &lt;relation&gt; {&lt;dimexpr<sub>2</sub>&gt;}</code>
<code>\dim_compare:nNnTF</code> ★	<code>\dim_compare:nNnTF</code> <code>{&lt;dimexpr<sub>1</sub>&gt;} &lt;relation&gt; {&lt;dimexpr<sub>2</sub>&gt;}</code> <code>{&lt;true code&gt;} {&lt;false code&gt;}</code>

---

This function first evaluates each of the *<dimension expressions>* as described for `\dim_eval:n`. The two results are then compared using the *<relation>*:

Equal	=
Greater than	>
Less than	<

---

<code>\dim_compare_p:n</code> ★	<code>\dim_compare_p:n { &lt;dimexpr<sub>1</sub>&gt; &lt;relation&gt; &lt;dimexpr<sub>2</sub>&gt; }</code>
<code>\dim_compare:nTF</code> ★	<code>\dim_compare:nTF</code> <code>{ &lt;dimexpr<sub>1</sub>&gt; &lt;relation&gt; &lt;dimexpr<sub>2</sub>&gt; }</code> <code>{&lt;true code&gt;} {&lt;false code&gt;}</code>

---

This function first evaluates each of the *<dimension expressions>* as described for `\dim_eval:n`. The two results are then compared using the *<relation>*:

Equal	= or ==
Greater than or equal to	>=
Greater than	>
Less than or equal to	<=
Less than	<
Not equal	!=

## 60 Dimension expression loops

<hr/> <code>\dim_do_while:nNnn</code> ☆ <hr/>	<code>\dim_do_while:nNnn {&lt;dimexpr<sub>1</sub>&gt;} &lt;relation&gt; {&lt;dimexpr<sub>2</sub>&gt;} {&lt;code&gt;}</code>
	Evaluates the relationship between the two <i>&lt;dimension expressions&gt;</i> as described for <code>\dim_compare:nNnTF</code> , and then places the <i>&lt;code&gt;</i> in the input stream if the <i>&lt;relation&gt;</i> is <b>true</b> . After the <i>&lt;code&gt;</i> has been processed by T <sub>E</sub> X the test will be repeated, and a loop will occur until the test is <b>false</b> .
<hr/> <code>\dim_do_until:nNnn</code> ☆ <hr/>	<code>\dim_do_until:nNnn {&lt;dimexpr<sub>1</sub>&gt;} &lt;relation&gt; {&lt;dimexpr<sub>2</sub>&gt;} {&lt;code&gt;}</code>
	Evaluates the relationship between the two <i>&lt;dimension expressions&gt;</i> as described for <code>\dim_compare:nNnTF</code> , and then places the <i>&lt;code&gt;</i> in the input stream if the <i>&lt;relation&gt;</i> is <b>false</b> . After the <i>&lt;code&gt;</i> has been processed by T <sub>E</sub> X the test will be repeated, and a loop will occur until the test is <b>true</b> .
<hr/> <code>\dim_until_do:nNnn</code> ☆ <hr/>	<code>\dim_until_do:nNnn {&lt;dimexpr<sub>1</sub>&gt;} &lt;relation&gt; {&lt;dimexpr<sub>2</sub>&gt;} {&lt;code&gt;}</code>
	Places the <i>&lt;code&gt;</i> in the input stream for T <sub>E</sub> X to process, and then evaluates the relationship between the two <i>&lt;dimension expressions&gt;</i> as described for <code>\dim_compare:nNnTF</code> . If the test is <b>false</b> then the <i>&lt;code&gt;</i> will be inserted into the input stream again and a loop will occur until the <i>&lt;relation&gt;</i> is <b>true</b> .
<hr/> <code>\dim_while_do:nNnn</code> ☆ <hr/>	<code>\dim_while_do:nNnn {&lt;dimexpr<sub>1</sub>&gt;} &lt;relation&gt; {&lt;dimexpr<sub>2</sub>&gt;} {&lt;code&gt;}</code>
	Places the <i>&lt;code&gt;</i> in the input stream for T <sub>E</sub> X to process, and then evaluates the relationship between the two <i>&lt;dimension expressions&gt;</i> as described for <code>\dim_compare:nNnTF</code> . If the test is <b>true</b> then the <i>&lt;code&gt;</i> will be inserted into the input stream again and a loop will occur until the <i>&lt;relation&gt;</i> is <b>false</b> .
<hr/> <code>\dim_do_while:nn</code> ☆ <hr/>	<code>\dim_do_while:nn { &lt;dimexpr<sub>1</sub>&gt; &lt;relation&gt; &lt;dimexpr<sub>2</sub>&gt; } {&lt;code&gt;}</code>
	Evaluates the relationship between the two <i>&lt;dimension expressions&gt;</i> as described for <code>\dim_compare:nTF</code> , and then places the <i>&lt;code&gt;</i> in the input stream if the <i>&lt;relation&gt;</i> is <b>true</b> . After the <i>&lt;code&gt;</i> has been processed by T <sub>E</sub> X the test will be repeated, and a loop will occur until the test is <b>false</b> .
<hr/> <code>\dim_do_until:nn</code> ☆ <hr/>	<code>\dim_do_until:nn { &lt;dimexpr<sub>1</sub>&gt; &lt;relation&gt; &lt;dimexpr<sub>2</sub>&gt; } {&lt;code&gt;}</code>
	Evaluates the relationship between the two <i>&lt;dimension expressions&gt;</i> as described for <code>\dim_compare:nTF</code> , and then places the <i>&lt;code&gt;</i> in the input stream if the <i>&lt;relation&gt;</i> is <b>false</b> . After the <i>&lt;code&gt;</i> has been processed by T <sub>E</sub> X the test will be repeated, and a loop will occur until the test is <b>true</b> .
<hr/> <code>\dim_until_do:nn</code> ☆ <hr/>	<code>\dim_until_do:nn { &lt;dimexpr<sub>1</sub>&gt; &lt;relation&gt; &lt;dimexpr<sub>2</sub>&gt; } {&lt;code&gt;}</code>
	Places the <i>&lt;code&gt;</i> in the input stream for T <sub>E</sub> X to process, and then evaluates the relationship between the two <i>&lt;dimension expressions&gt;</i> as described for <code>\dim_compare:nTF</code> . If the test is <b>false</b> then the <i>&lt;code&gt;</i> will be inserted into the input stream again and a loop will occur until the <i>&lt;relation&gt;</i> is <b>true</b> .

---

<code>\dim_while_do:nn</code> ☆	<code>\dim_while_do:nn { &lt;dimexpr1&gt; &lt;relation&gt; &lt;dimexpr2&gt; } {&lt;code&gt;}</code>
---------------------------------	---

---

Places the *<code>* in the input stream for T<sub>E</sub>X to process, and then evaluates the relationship between the two *<dimension expressions>* as described for `\dim_compare:nTF`. If the test is `true` then the *<code>* will be inserted into the input stream again and a loop will occur until the *<relation>* is `false`.

## 61 Using dim expressions and variables

---

<code>\dim_eval:n</code> ★	<code>\dim_eval:n {&lt;dimension expression&gt;}</code>
----------------------------	---

---

Updated: 2011-10-22

Evaluates the *<dimension expression>*, expanding any dimensions and token list variables within the *<expression>* to their content (without requiring `\dim_use:N/\tl_use:N`) and applying the standard mathematical rules. The result of the calculation is left in the input stream as a *<dimension denotation>* after two expansions. This will be expressed in points (pt), and will require suitable termination if used in a T<sub>E</sub>X-style assignment as it is *not* an *<internal dimension>*.

---

<code>\dim_use:N</code> ★	<code>\dim_use:N &lt;dimension&gt;</code>
---------------------------	---

---

`\dim_use:c` ★

Recovers the content of a *<dimension>* and places it directly in the input stream. An error will be raised if the variable does not exist or if it is invalid. Can be omitted in places where a *<dimension>* is required (such as in the argument of `\dim_eval:n`).

**T<sub>E</sub>Xhackers note:** `\dim_use:N` is the T<sub>E</sub>X primitive `\the`: this is one of several L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X3 names for this primitive.

## 62 Viewing dim variables

---

<code>\dim_show:N</code>	<code>\dim_show:N &lt;dimension&gt;</code>
--------------------------	--

---

`\dim_show:c`

Displays the value of the *<dimension>* on the terminal.

---

<code>\dim_show:n</code>	<code>\dim_show:n &lt;dimension expression&gt;</code>
--------------------------	---

---

New: 2011-11-22

Displays the result of evaluating the *<dimension expression>* on the terminal.

## 63 Constant dimensions

---

<code>\c_max_dim</code>	The maximum value that can be stored as a dimension or skip (these are equivalent).
-------------------------	---

---

`\c_zero_dim`

A zero length as a dimension or a skip (these are equivalent).



## 64 Scratch dimensions

---

<code>\l_tmpa_dim</code>	Scratch dimension for local assignment. These are never used by the kernel code, and so are safe for use with any L <sup>A</sup> T <sub>E</sub> X3-defined function. However, they may be overwritten by other non-kernel code and so should only be used for short-term storage.
<code>\l_tmpb_dim</code>	
<code>\l_tmpc_dim</code>	

---

<code>\g_tmpa_dim</code>	Scratch dimension for global assignment. These are never used by the kernel code, and so are safe for use with any L <sup>A</sup> T <sub>E</sub> X3-defined function. However, they may be overwritten by other non-kernel code and so should only be used for short-term storage.
<code>\g_tmpb_dim</code>	

---

## 65 Creating and initialising skip variables

---

<code>\skip_new:N</code>	<code>\skip_new:N &lt;skip&gt;</code>
<code>\skip_new:c</code>	Creates a new <i>&lt;skip&gt;</i> or raises an error if the name is already taken. The declaration is global. The <i>&lt;skip&gt;</i> will initially be equal to 0 pt.

---

<code>\skip_zero:N</code>	<code>\skip_zero:N &lt;skip&gt;</code>
<code>\skip_zero:c</code>	Sets <i>&lt;skip&gt;</i> to 0 pt.
<code>\skip_gzero:N</code>	
<code>\skip_gzero:c</code>	

---

<code>\skip_zero_new:N</code>	<code>\skip_zero_new:N &lt;skip&gt;</code>
<code>\skip_zero_new:c</code>	Ensures that the <i>&lt;skip&gt;</i> exists globally by applying <code>\skip_new:N</code> if necessary, then applies <code>\skip_(g)zero:N</code> to leave the <i>&lt;skip&gt;</i> set to zero.
<code>\skip_gzero_new:N</code>	
<code>\skip_gzero_new:c</code>	

---

New: 2012-01-07

---

## 66 Setting skip variables

---

<code>\skip_add:Nn</code>	<code>\skip_add:Nn &lt;skip&gt; {&lt;skip expression&gt;}</code>
<code>\skip_add:cn</code>	Adds the result of the <i>&lt;skip expression&gt;</i> to the current content of the <i>&lt;skip&gt;</i> .
<code>\skip_gadd:Nn</code>	
<code>\skip_gadd:cn</code>	

---

Updated: 2011-10-22

---

<code>\skip_set:Nn</code>	<code>\skip_set:Nn &lt;skip&gt; {&lt;skip expression&gt;}</code>
<code>\skip_set:cn</code>	Sets <i>&lt;skip&gt;</i> to the value of <i>&lt;skip expression&gt;</i> , which must evaluate to a length with units and may include a rubber component (for example 1 cm plus 0.5 cm).
<code>\skip_gset:Nn</code>	
<code>\skip_gset:cn</code>	

---

Updated: 2011-10-22

---

---

```

\skip_set_eq:NN
\skip_set_eq:(cN|Nc|cc)
\skip_gset_eq:NN
\skip_gset_eq:(cN|Nc|cc)

```

---

```

\skip_set_eq:NN <skip1> <skip2>

```

Sets the content of  $\langle skip1 \rangle$  equal to that of  $\langle skip2 \rangle$ .

---

```

\skip_sub:Nn
\skip_sub:cn
\skip_gsub:Nn
\skip_gsub:cn

```

---

```

\skip_sub:Nn <skip> {\skip expression}

```

Subtracts the result of the  $\langle skip expression \rangle$  to the current content of the  $\langle skip \rangle$ .

Updated: 2011-10-22

---

## 67 Skip expression conditionals

---

```

\skip_if_eq_p:nn ★
\skip_if_eq:nnTF ★

```

---

```

\skip_if_eq_p:nn {\skipexpr1} {\skipexpr2}
\dim_compare:nTF
  {\skip expr1} {\skip expr2}
  {\true code} {\false code}

```

This function first evaluates each of the  $\langle skip expressions \rangle$  as described for `\skip_eval:n`. The two results are then compared for exact equality, *i.e.* both the fixed and rubber components must be the same for the test to be true.

---

```

\skip_if_infinite_glue_p:n ★
\skip_if_infinite_glue:nTF ★

```

---

```

\skip_if_infinite_glue_p:n {\skipexpr}
\skip_if_infinite_glue:nTF {\skipexpr} {\true code} {\false code}

```

Evaluates the  $\langle skip expression \rangle$  as described for `\skip_eval:n`, and then tests if this contains an infinite stretch or shrink component (or both).

## 68 Using skip expressions and variables

---

```

\skip_eval:n ★

```

---

Updated: 2011-10-22

---

```

\skip_eval:n {\skip expression}

```

Evaluates the  $\langle skip expression \rangle$ , expanding any skips and token list variables within the  $\langle expression \rangle$  to their content (without requiring `\skip_use:N/\tl_use:N`) and applying the standard mathematical rules. The result of the calculation is left in the input stream as a  $\langle glue denotation \rangle$  after two expansions. This will be expressed in points (`pt`), and will require suitable termination if used in a T<sub>E</sub>X-style assignment as it is *not* an  $\langle internal glue \rangle$ .

<hr/> <code>\skip_use:N</code> ★	<code>\skip_use:N</code> $\langle skip \rangle$
<hr/> <code>\skip_use:c</code> ★	Recovers the content of a $\langle skip \rangle$ and places it directly in the input stream. An error will be raised if the variable does not exist or if it is invalid. Can be omitted in places where a $\langle dimension \rangle$ is required (such as in the argument of <code>\skip_eval:n</code> ).

**T<sub>E</sub>Xhackers note:** `\skip_use:N` is the T<sub>E</sub>X primitive `\the`: this is one of several L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X3 names for this primitive.

## 69 Viewing skip variables

<hr/> <code>\skip_show:N</code>	<code>\skip_show:N</code> $\langle skip \rangle$
<hr/> <code>\skip_show:c</code>	Displays the value of the $\langle skip \rangle$ on the terminal.
<hr/> <code>\skip_show:n</code>	<code>\skip_show:n</code> $\langle skip \text{ expression} \rangle$
<hr/> New: 2011-11-22	Displays the result of evaluating the $\langle skip \text{ expression} \rangle$ on the terminal.

## 70 Constant skips

<hr/> <code>\c_max_skip</code>	The maximum value that can be stored as a dimension or skip (these are equivalent).
<hr/> <code>\c_zero_skip</code>	A zero length as a dimension or a skip (these are equivalent).

## 71 Scratch skips

<hr/> <code>\l_tmpa_skip</code> <code>\l_tmpb_skip</code> <code>\l_tmpc_skip</code>	Scratch skip for local assignment. These are never used by the kernel code, and so are safe for use with any L <sup>A</sup> T <sub>E</sub> X3-defined function. However, they may be overwritten by other non-kernel code and so should only be used for short-term storage.
<hr/> <code>\g_tmpa_skip</code> <code>\g_tmpb_skip</code>	Scratch skip for global assignment. These are never used by the kernel code, and so are safe for use with any L <sup>A</sup> T <sub>E</sub> X3-defined function. However, they may be overwritten by other non-kernel code and so should only be used for short-term storage.

## 72 Creating and initialising muskip variables

---

`\muskip_new:N`  
`\muskip_new:c`

---

`\muskip_new:N`  $\langle muskip \rangle$

Creates a new  $\langle muskip \rangle$  or raises an error if the name is already taken. The declaration is global. The  $\langle muskip \rangle$  will initially be equal to 0 mu.

---

`\muskip_zero:N`  
`\muskip_zero:c`  
`\muskip_gzero:N`  
`\muskip_gzero:c`

---

`\skip_zero:N`  $\langle muskip \rangle$

Sets  $\langle muskip \rangle$  to 0 mu.

---

`\muskip_zero_new:N`  
`\muskip_zero_new:c`  
`\muskip_gzero_new:N`  
`\muskip_gzero_new:c`

---

`\muskip_zero_new:N`  $\langle muskip \rangle$

Ensures that the  $\langle muskip \rangle$  exists globally by applying `\muskip_new:N` if necessary, then applies `\muskip_(g)zero:N` to leave the  $\langle muskip \rangle$  set to zero.

New: 2012-01-07

---

## 73 Setting muskip variables

---

`\muskip_add:Nn`  
`\muskip_add:cn`  
`\muskip_gadd:Nn`  
`\muskip_gadd:cn`

---

`\muskip_add:Nn`  $\langle muskip \rangle$   $\{ \langle muskip expression \rangle \}$

Adds the result of the  $\langle muskip expression \rangle$  to the current content of the  $\langle muskip \rangle$ .

Updated: 2011-10-22

---



---

`\muskip_set:Nn`  
`\muskip_set:cn`  
`\muskip_gset:Nn`  
`\muskip_gset:cn`

---

`\muskip_set:Nn`  $\langle muskip \rangle$   $\{ \langle muskip expression \rangle \}$

Sets  $\langle muskip \rangle$  to the value of  $\langle muskip expression \rangle$ , which must evaluate to a math length with units and may include a rubber component (for example 1 mu plus 0.5 mu).

Updated: 2011-10-22

---



---

`\muskip_set_eq:NN`  
`\muskip_set_eq:(cN|Nc|cc)`  
`\muskip_gset_eq:NN`  
`\muskip_gset_eq:(cN|Nc|cc)`

---

`\muskip_set_eq:NN`  $\langle muskip1 \rangle$   $\langle muskip2 \rangle$

Sets the content of  $\langle muskip1 \rangle$  equal to that of  $\langle muskip2 \rangle$ .

---

`\muskip_sub:Nn`  
`\muskip_sub:cn`  
`\muskip_gsub:Nn`  
`\muskip_gsub:cn`

---

`\muskip_sub:Nn`  $\langle muskip \rangle$   $\{ \langle muskip expression \rangle \}$

Subtracts the result of the  $\langle muskip expression \rangle$  to the current content of the  $\langle skip \rangle$ .

Updated: 2011-10-22

---

## 74 Using muskip expressions and variables

<hr/> <code>\muskip_eval:n</code> ★ <hr/>	<code>\muskip_eval:n {⟨muskip expression⟩}</code>
Updated: 2011-10-22	Evaluates the $\langle muskip expression \rangle$ , expanding any skips and token list variables within the $\langle expression \rangle$ to their content (without requiring <code>\muskip_use:N/\tl_use:N</code> ) and applying the standard mathematical rules. The result of the calculation is left in the input stream as a $\langle muglue denotation \rangle$ after two expansions. This will be expressed in $\mu$ , and will require suitable termination if used in a T <sub>E</sub> X-style assignment as it is <i>not</i> an $\langle internal muglue \rangle$ .

<hr/> <code>\muskip_use:N</code> ★ <code>\muskip_use:c</code> ★ <hr/>	<code>\muskip_use:N ⟨muskip⟩</code> Recovers the content of a $\langle skip \rangle$ and places it directly in the input stream. An error will be raised if the variable does not exist or if it is invalid. Can be omitted in places where a $\langle dimension \rangle$ is required (such as in the argument of <code>\muskip_eval:n</code> ).
--	---

**T<sub>E</sub>Xhackers note:** `\muskip_use:N` is the T<sub>E</sub>X primitive `\the`: this is one of several L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X3 names for this primitive.

## 75 Inserting skips into the output

<hr/> <code>\skip_horizontal:N</code> <code>\skip_horizontal:(c n)</code> <hr/>	<code>\skip_horizontal:N ⟨skip⟩</code> <code>\skip_horizontal:n {⟨skipexpr⟩}</code>
Updated: 2011-10-22	Inserts a horizontal $\langle skip \rangle$ into the current list.

**T<sub>E</sub>Xhackers note:** `\skip_horizontal:N` is the T<sub>E</sub>X primitive `\hskip` renamed.

<hr/> <code>\skip_vertical:N</code> <code>\skip_vertical:(c n)</code> <hr/>	<code>\skip_vertical:N ⟨skip⟩</code> <code>\skip_vertical:n {⟨skipexpr⟩}</code>
Updated: 2011-10-22	Inserts a vertical $\langle skip \rangle$ into the current list.

**T<sub>E</sub>Xhackers note:** `\skip_vertical:N` is the T<sub>E</sub>X primitive `\vskip` renamed.

## 76 Viewing muskip variables

<hr/> <code>\muskip_show:N</code> <code>\muskip_show:c</code> <hr/>	<code>\muskip_show:N ⟨muskip⟩</code> Displays the value of the $\langle muskip \rangle$ on the terminal.
<hr/> <code>\muskip_show:n</code> <hr/>	<code>\muskip_show:n ⟨muskip expression⟩</code>
New: 2011-11-22	Displays the result of evaluating the $\langle muskip expression \rangle$ on the terminal.

## 77 Internal functions

---

```

\if_dim:w \if_dim:w <dimen1> <relation> <dimen1>
          <true code>
\else:
          <false>
\fi:

```

---

Compare two dimensions. The *<relation>* is one of <, = or > with category code 12.

**T<sub>E</sub>Xhackers note:** This is the T<sub>E</sub>X primitive `\ifdim`.

---

```

\dim_eval:w ★ \dim_eval:w <dimexpr> \dim_eval_end:
\dim_eval_end ★

```

---

Evaluates *<dimension expression>* as described for `\dim_eval:n`. The evaluation stops when an unexpandable token which is not a valid part of a dimension is read or when `\dim_eval_end:` is reached. The latter is gobbled by the scanner mechanism: `\dim_eval_end:` itself is unexpandable but used correctly the entire construct is expandable.

**T<sub>E</sub>Xhackers note:** This is the  $\varepsilon$ -T<sub>E</sub>X primitive `\dimexpr`.

## 78 Experimental skip functions

---

```

\skip_split_finite_else_action:nnNN \skip_split_finite_else_action:nnNN {<skipexpr>} {<action>}
                                     <dimen1> <dimen2>

```

---

Updated: 2011-10-22

Checks if the *<skipexpr>* contains finite glue. If it does then it assigns *<dimen1>* the stretch component and *<dimen2>* the shrink component. If it contains infinite glue set *<dimen1>* and *<dimen2>* to 0pt and place #2 into the input stream: this is usually an error or warning message of some sort.

## 79 Internal functions

---

<code>\dim_strip_bp:n</code> ★	<code>\dim_strip_bp:n {⟨dimension expression⟩}</code>
<code>\dim_strip_pt:n</code> ★	<code>\dim_strip_pt:n {⟨dimension expression⟩}</code>

---

New: 2011-11-11

Evaluates the *⟨dimension expression⟩*, expanding any dimensions and token list variables within the *⟨expression⟩* to their content (without requiring `\dim_use:N/\tl_use:N`) and applying the standard mathematical rules. The magnitude of the result, expressed in big points (**bp**) or points (**pt**), will be left in the input stream with *no units*. If the decimal part of the magnitude is zero, this will be omitted.

If the *⟨dimension expression⟩* contains additional units, these will be ignored, so for example

```
\dim_strip_pt:n { 1 bp pt }
```

will leave 1.00374 in the input stream (*i.e.* the magnitude of one “big point” when converted to points).

## Part XI

# The l3tl package

## Token lists

T<sub>E</sub>X works with tokens, and L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X3 therefore provides a number of functions to deal with token lists. Token lists may be present directly in the argument to a function:

```
\foo:n { a collection of \tokens }
```

or may be stored for processing in a so-called “token list variable”, which have the suffix `tl`: the argument to a function:

```
\foo:N \l_some_tl
```

In both cases, functions are available to test and manipulate the lists of tokens, and these have the module prefix `tl`. In many cases, function which can be applied to token list variables are paired with similar functions for application to explicit lists of tokens: the two “views” of a token list are therefore collected together here.

A token list can be seen either as a list of “items”, or a list of “tokens”. An item is whatever `\use_none:n` grabs as its argument: either a single token or a brace group, with optional leading explicit space characters (each item is thus itself a token list). A token is either a normal `N` argument, or `{`, `{`, or `}` (assuming normal T<sub>E</sub>X category codes). Thus for example

```
{ Hello } ~ world
```

contains six items (`Hello`, `w`, `o`, `r`, `l` and `d`), but thirteen tokens (`{`, `H`, `e`, `l`, `l`, `o`, `}`, `␣`, `w`, `o`, `r`, `l` and `d`). Functions which act on items are often faster than their analogue acting directly on tokens.

## 80 Creating and initialising token list variables

---

```
\tl_new:N
\tl_new:c
```

---

```
\tl_new:N <tl var>
```

Creates a new *<tl var>* or raises an error if the name is already taken. The declaration is global. The *<tl var>* will initially be empty.

---

```
\tl_const:Nn
\tl_const:(Nx|cn|cx)
```

---

```
\tl_const:Nn <tl var> {<token list>}
```

Creates a new constant *<tl var>* or raises an error if the name is already taken. The value of the *<tl var>* will be set globally to the *<token list>*.

---

```
\tl_clear:N
\tl_clear:c
\tl_gclear:N
\tl_gclear:c
```

---

```
\tl_clear:N <tl var>
```

Clears all entries from the *<tl var>* within the scope of the current T<sub>E</sub>X group.



---

<code>\tl_clear_new:N</code>	<code>\tl_clear_new:N &lt;tl var&gt;</code>
<code>\tl_clear_new:c</code>	
<code>\tl_gclear_new:N</code>	Ensures that the <code>&lt;tl var&gt;</code> exists globally by applying <code>\tl_new:N</code> if necessary, then applies
<code>\tl_gclear_new:c</code>	<code>\tl_(g)clear:N</code> to leave the <code>&lt;tl var&gt;</code> empty.

---



---

<code>\tl_set_eq:NN</code>	<code>\tl_set_eq:NN &lt;tl var1&gt; &lt;tl var2&gt;</code>
<code>\tl_set_eq:(cN Nc cc)</code>	Sets the content of <code>&lt;tl var1&gt;</code> equal to that of <code>&lt;tl var2&gt;</code> .
<code>\tl_gset_eq:NN</code>	
<code>\tl_gset_eq:(cN Nc cc)</code>	

---

## 81 Adding data to token list variables

---

<code>\tl_set:Nn</code>	<code>\tl_set:Nn &lt;tl var&gt; {&lt;tokens&gt;}</code>
<code>\tl_set:(NV Nv No Nf Nx cn NV Nv co cf cx)</code>	
<code>\tl_gset:Nn</code>	
<code>\tl_gset:(NV Nv No Nf Nx cn cV cV co cf cx)</code>	

---

Sets `<tl var>` to contain `<tokens>`, removing any previous content from the variable.

---

<code>\tl_put_left:Nn</code>	<code>\tl_put_left:Nn &lt;tl var&gt; {&lt;tokens&gt;}</code>
<code>\tl_put_left:(NV No Nx cn cV co cx)</code>	
<code>\tl_gput_left:Nn</code>	
<code>\tl_gput_left:(NV No Nx cn cV co cx)</code>	

---

Appends `<tokens>` to the left side of the current content of `<tl var>`.

---

<code>\tl_put_right:Nn</code>	<code>\tl_put_right:Nn &lt;tl var&gt; {&lt;tokens&gt;}</code>
<code>\tl_put_right:(NV No Nx cn cV co cx)</code>	
<code>\tl_gput_right:Nn</code>	
<code>\tl_gput_right:(NV No Nx cn cV co cx)</code>	

---

Appends `<tokens>` to the right side of the current content of `<tl var>`.

## 82 Modifying token list variables

---

<code>\tl_replace_once:Nnn</code>	<code>\tl_replace_once:Nnn &lt;tl var&gt; {&lt;old tokens&gt;} {&lt;new tokens&gt;}</code>
<code>\tl_replace_once:cnn</code>	
<code>\tl_greplace_once:Nnn</code>	Replaces the first (leftmost) occurrence of <code>&lt;old tokens&gt;</code> in the <code>&lt;tl var&gt;</code> with <code>&lt;new tokens&gt;</code> .
<code>\tl_greplace_once:cnn</code>	<code>&lt;Old tokens&gt;</code> cannot contain <code>{</code> , <code>}</code> or <code>#</code> (assuming normal T <sub>E</sub> X category codes).

---

Updated: 2011-08-11

---

<hr/> <code>\tl_replace_all:Nnn</code> <code>\tl_replace_all:cnn</code> <code>\tl_greplace_all:Nnn</code> <code>\tl_greplace_all:cnn</code> <hr/> Updated: 2011-08-11 <hr/>	<code>\tl_replace_all:Nnn &lt;tl var&gt; {&lt;old tokens&gt;} {&lt;new tokens&gt;}</code> <p>Replaces all occurrences of <i>&lt;old tokens&gt;</i> in the <i>&lt;tl var&gt;</i> with <i>&lt;new tokens&gt;</i>. <i>&lt;Old tokens&gt;</i> cannot contain <code>{</code>, <code>}</code> or <code>#</code> (assuming normal T<sub>E</sub>X category codes). As this function operates from left to right, the pattern <i>&lt;old tokens&gt;</i> may remain after the replacement (see <code>\tl_remove_all:Nn</code> for an example). The assignment is restricted to the current T<sub>E</sub>X group.</p>
<hr/> <code>\tl_remove_once:Nn</code> <code>\tl_remove_once:cn</code> <code>\tl_gremove_once:Nn</code> <code>\tl_gremove_once:cn</code> <hr/> Updated: 2011-08-11 <hr/>	<code>\tl_remove_once:Nn &lt;tl var&gt; {&lt;tokens&gt;}</code> <p>Removes the first (leftmost) occurrence of <i>&lt;tokens&gt;</i> from the <i>&lt;tl var&gt;</i>. <i>&lt;Tokens&gt;</i> cannot contain <code>{</code>, <code>}</code> or <code>#</code> (assuming normal T<sub>E</sub>X category codes).</p>
<hr/> <code>\tl_remove_all:Nn</code> <code>\tl_remove_all:cn</code> <code>\tl_gremove_all:Nn</code> <code>\tl_gremove_all:cn</code> <hr/> Updated: 2011-08-11 <hr/>	<code>\tl_remove_all:Nn &lt;tl var&gt; {&lt;tokens&gt;}</code> <p>Removes all occurrences of <i>&lt;tokens&gt;</i> from the <i>&lt;tl var&gt;</i>. <i>&lt;Tokens&gt;</i> cannot contain <code>{</code>, <code>}</code> or <code>#</code> (assuming normal T<sub>E</sub>X category codes). As this function operates from left to right, the pattern <i>&lt;tokens&gt;</i> may remain after the removal, for instance,</p> <div style="text-align: center;"> <code>\tl_set:Nn \l_tmpa_tl {abbccd} \tl_remove_all:Nn \l_tmpa_tl {bc}</code> </div> <p>will result in <code>\l_tmpa_tl</code> containing <code>abcd</code>.</p>

## 83 Reassigning token list category codes

<hr/> <code>\tl_set_rescan:Nnn</code> <code>\tl_set_rescan:(Nno Nnx cnn cno cnx)</code> <code>\tl_gset_rescan:Nnn</code> <code>\tl_gset_rescan:(Nno Nnx cnn cno cnx)</code> <hr/> Updated: 2011-12-18 <hr/>	<code>\tl_set_rescan:Nnn &lt;tl var&gt; {&lt;setup&gt;} {&lt;tokens&gt;}</code> <p>Sets <i>&lt;tl var&gt;</i> to contain <i>&lt;tokens&gt;</i>, applying the category code régime specified in the <i>&lt;setup&gt;</i> before carrying out the assignment. This allows the <i>&lt;tl var&gt;</i> to contain material with category codes other than those that apply when <i>&lt;tokens&gt;</i> are absorbed. See also <code>\tl_rescan:nn</code>.</p>
<hr/> <code>\tl_rescan:nn</code> <hr/> Updated: 2011-12-18 <hr/>	<code>\tl_rescan:nn {&lt;setup&gt;} {&lt;tokens&gt;}</code> <p>Rescans <i>&lt;tokens&gt;</i> applying the category code régime specified in the <i>&lt;setup&gt;</i>, and leaves the resulting tokens in the input stream. See also <code>\tl_set_rescan:Nnn</code>.</p>

## 84 Reassigning token list character codes

---

`\tl_to_lowercase:n`

---

`\tl_to_lowercase:n {⟨tokens⟩}`

Works through all of the *⟨tokens⟩*, replacing each character with the lower case equivalent as defined by `\char_set_lccode:nn`. Characters with no defined lower case character code are left unchanged. This process does not alter the category code assigned to the *⟨tokens⟩*.

**T<sub>E</sub>Xhackers note:** This is the T<sub>E</sub>X primitive `\lowercase` renamed. As a result, this function takes place on execution and not on expansion.

---

`\tl_to_uppercase:n`

---

`\tl_to_uppercase:n {⟨tokens⟩}`

Works through all of the *⟨tokens⟩*, replacing each character with the upper case equivalent as defined by `\char_set_uccode:nn`. Characters with no defined lower case character code are left unchanged. This process does not alter the category code assigned to the *⟨tokens⟩*.

**T<sub>E</sub>Xhackers note:** This is the T<sub>E</sub>X primitive `\uppercase` renamed. As a result, this function takes place on execution and not on expansion.

## 85 Token list conditionals

---

`\tl_if_blank_p:n` ★

`\tl_if_blank_p:n {⟨token list⟩}`

`\tl_if_blank_p:(V|o)` ★

`\tl_if_blank:nTF {⟨token list⟩} {⟨true code⟩} {⟨false code⟩}`

`\tl_if_blank:nTF` ★

Tests if the *⟨token list⟩* consists only of blank spaces (*i.e.* contains no item). The test is **true** if *⟨token list⟩* is zero or more explicit tokens of character code 32 and category code 10, and is **false** otherwise.

`\tl_if_blank:(V|o)TF` ★

---



---

`\tl_if_empty_p:N` ★

`\tl_if_empty_p:N ⟨tl var⟩`

`\tl_if_empty_p:c` ★

`\tl_if_empty:NTF ⟨tl var⟩ {⟨true code⟩} {⟨false code⟩}`

`\tl_if_empty:NTF` ★

Tests if the *⟨token list variable⟩* is entirely empty (*i.e.* contains no tokens at all).

`\tl_if_empty:cTF` ★

---



---

`\tl_if_empty_p:n` ★

`\tl_if_empty_p:n {⟨token list⟩}`

`\tl_if_empty_p:(V|o|x)` ★

`\tl_if_empty:nTF {⟨token list⟩} {⟨true code⟩} {⟨false code⟩}`

`\tl_if_empty:nTF` ★

Tests if the *⟨token list⟩* is entirely empty (*i.e.* contains no tokens at all). All versions of these functions are fully expandable (including those involving an **x**-type expansion).

`\tl_if_empty:(V|o|x)TF` ★

---

---

<code>\tl_if_eq_p:NN</code>	★	<code>\tl_if_eq_p:NN {\tl var_1} {\tl var_2}</code>
<code>\tl_if_eq_p:(Nc cN cc)</code>	★	<code>\tl_if_eq:NNTF {\tl var_1} {\tl var_2} {\true code} {\false code}</code>
<code>\tl_if_eq:NNTF</code>	★	
<code>\tl_if_eq:(Nc cN cc)TF</code>	★	Compares the content of two <i>token list variables</i> and is logically true if the two contain the same list of tokens ( <i>i.e.</i> identical in both the list of characters they contain and the category codes of those characters). Thus for example

---

```

\tl_set:Nn \l_tmpa_tl { abc }
\tl_set:Nx \l_tmpb_tl { \tl_to_str:n { abc } }
\tl_if_eq_p:NN \l_tmpa_tl \l_tmpb_tl

```

is logically false.

---

<code>\tl_if_eq:nnTF</code>		<code>\tl_if_eq:nnTF &lt;token list1&gt; {\token list2} {\true code} {\false code}</code>
		Tests if <i>&lt;token list1&gt;</i> and <i>&lt;token list2&gt;</i> are equal, both in respect of character codes and category codes.

---



---

<code>\tl_if_in:NnTF</code>		<code>\tl_if_in:NnTF &lt;tl var&gt; {\token list} {\true code} {\false code}</code>
<code>\tl_if_in:cnTF</code>		Tests if the <i>&lt;token list&gt;</i> is found in the content of the <i>&lt;token list variable&gt;</i> . The <i>&lt;token list&gt;</i> cannot contain the tokens <code>{</code> , <code>}</code> or <code>#</code> (assuming the usual T <sub>E</sub> X category codes apply).

---



---

<code>\tl_if_in:nnTF</code>		<code>\tl_if_in:nnTF {\token list1} {\token list2} {\true code} {\false code}</code>
<code>\tl_if_in:(Vn on no)TF</code>		Tests if <i>&lt;token list2&gt;</i> is found inside <i>&lt;token list1&gt;</i> . The <i>&lt;token list&gt;</i> cannot contain the tokens <code>{</code> , <code>}</code> or <code>#</code> (assuming the usual T <sub>E</sub> X category codes apply).

---



---

<code>\tl_if_single_p:N</code>	★	<code>\tl_if_single_p:N {\tl var}</code>
<code>\tl_if_single_p:c</code>	★	<code>\tl_if_single:NNTF {\tl var} {\true code} {\false code}</code>
<code>\tl_if_single:NNTF</code>	★	
<code>\tl_if_single:cNTF</code>	★	Tests if the content of the <i>&lt;tl var&gt;</i> consists of a single item, <i>i.e.</i> is either a single normal token (excluding spaces, and brace tokens) or a single brace group, surrounded by optional spaces on both sides. In other words, such a token list has length 1 according to <code>\tl_length:N</code> .
Updated: 2011-08-13		

---



---

<code>\tl_if_single_p:n</code>	★	<code>\tl_if_single_p:n {\token list}</code>
<code>\tl_if_single:nNTF</code>	★	<code>\tl_if_single:nNTF {\token list} {\true code} {\false code}</code>
Updated: 2011-08-13		
		Tests if the token list has exactly one item, <i>i.e.</i> is either a single normal token or a single brace group, surrounded by optional spaces on both sides. In other words, such a token list has length 1 according to <code>\tl_length:n</code> .

---



---

<code>\tl_if_single_token_p:n</code>	★	<code>\tl_if_single_token_p:n {\token list}</code>
<code>\tl_if_single_token:nNTF</code>	★	<code>\tl_if_single_token:nNTF {\token list} {\true code} {\false code}</code>
New: 2011-08-11		
		Tests if the token list consists of exactly one token, <i>i.e.</i> is either a single space character or a single “normal” token. Token groups ( <code>{...}</code> ) are not single tokens.

---

## 86 Mapping to token lists

<hr/>	
<code>\tl_map_function:NN</code> ☆	<code>\tl_map_function:NN &lt;tl var&gt; &lt;function&gt;</code>
<code>\tl_map_function:cN</code> ☆	
<hr/>	
	Applies <code>&lt;function&gt;</code> to every <code>&lt;item&gt;</code> in the <code>&lt;tl var&gt;</code> . The <code>&lt;function&gt;</code> will receive one argument for each iteration. This may be a number of tokens if the <code>&lt;item&gt;</code> was stored within braces. Hence the <code>&lt;function&gt;</code> should anticipate receiving <code>n</code> -type arguments. See also <code>\tl_map_function:nN</code> .
<hr/>	
<code>\tl_map_function:nN</code> ☆	<code>\tl_map_function:nN &lt;token list&gt; &lt;function&gt;</code>
<hr/>	
	Applies <code>&lt;function&gt;</code> to every <code>&lt;item&gt;</code> in the <code>&lt;token list&gt;</code> . The <code>&lt;function&gt;</code> will receive one argument for each iteration. This may be a number of tokens if the <code>&lt;item&gt;</code> was stored within braces. Hence the <code>&lt;function&gt;</code> should anticipate receiving <code>n</code> -type arguments. See also <code>\tl_map_function:nN</code> .
<hr/>	
<code>\tl_map_inline:Nn</code>	<code>\tl_map_inline:Nn &lt;tl var&gt; {&lt;inline function&gt;}</code>
<code>\tl_map_inline:cN</code>	
<hr/>	
	Applies the <code>&lt;inline function&gt;</code> to every <code>&lt;item&gt;</code> stored within the <code>&lt;tl var&gt;</code> . The <code>&lt;inline function&gt;</code> should consist of code which will receive the <code>&lt;item&gt;</code> as #1. One in line mapping can be nested inside another. See also <code>\tl_map_function:Nn</code> .
<hr/>	
<code>\tl_map_inline:nn</code>	<code>\tl_map_inline:nn &lt;token list&gt; {&lt;inline function&gt;}</code>
<hr/>	
	Applies the <code>&lt;inline function&gt;</code> to every <code>&lt;item&gt;</code> stored within the <code>&lt;token list&gt;</code> . The <code>&lt;inline function&gt;</code> should consist of code which will receive the <code>&lt;item&gt;</code> as #1. One in line mapping can be nested inside another. See also <code>\tl_map_function:nn</code> .
<hr/>	
<code>\tl_map_variable:NNn</code>	<code>\tl_map_variable:NNn &lt;tl var&gt; &lt;variable&gt; {&lt;function&gt;}</code>
<code>\tl_map_variable:cNn</code>	
<hr/>	
	Applies the <code>&lt;function&gt;</code> to every <code>&lt;item&gt;</code> stored within the <code>&lt;tl var&gt;</code> . The <code>&lt;function&gt;</code> should consist of code which will receive the <code>&lt;item&gt;</code> stored in the <code>&lt;variable&gt;</code> . One variable mapping can be nested inside another. See also <code>\tl_map_inline:Nn</code> .
<hr/>	
<code>\tl_map_variable:nNn</code>	<code>\tl_map_variable:nNn &lt;token list&gt; &lt;variable&gt; {&lt;function&gt;}</code>
<hr/>	
	Applies the <code>&lt;function&gt;</code> to every <code>&lt;item&gt;</code> stored within the <code>&lt;token list&gt;</code> . The <code>&lt;function&gt;</code> should consist of code which will receive the <code>&lt;item&gt;</code> stored in the <code>&lt;variable&gt;</code> . One variable mapping can be nested inside another. See also <code>\tl_map_inline:nn</code> .

---

`\tl_map_break` ☆

---

`\tl_map_break:`

Used to terminate a `\tl_map...` function before all entries in the *token list variable* have been processed. This will normally take place within a conditional statement, for example

```
\tl_map_inline:Nn \l_my_tl
{
  \str_if_eq:nnTF { #1 } { bingo }
  { \tl_map_break: }
  {
    % Do something useful
  }
}
```

Use outside of a `\tl_map...` scenario will lead low level T<sub>E</sub>X errors.

## 87 Using token lists

---

`\tl_to_str:N` ☆

---

`\tl_to_str:N` *tl var*

`\tl_to_str:c` ☆

---

Converts the content of the *tl var* into a series of characters with category code 12 (other) with the exception of spaces, which retain category code 10 (space). This *string* is then left in the input stream.

---

`\tl_to_str:n` ☆

---

`\tl_to_str:n` *{tokens}*

Converts the given *tokens* into a series of characters with category code 12 (other) with the exception of spaces, which retain category code 10 (space). This *string* is then left in the input stream. Note that this function requires only a single expansion.

**T<sub>E</sub>Xhackers note:** This is the  $\varepsilon$ -T<sub>E</sub>X primitive `\detokenize`.

---

`\tl_use:N` ☆

---

`\tl_use:N` *tl var*

`\tl_use:c` ☆

---

Recovers the content of a *tl var* and places it directly in the input stream. An error will be raised if the variable does not exist or if it is invalid. Note that it is possible to use a *tl var* directly without an accessor function.

## 88 Working with the content of token lists

---

`\tl_length:n` ☆

---

`\tl_length:n` *{tokens}*

`\tl_length:(V|o)` ☆

---

Updated: 2011-08-13

Counts the number of *items* in *tokens* and leaves this information in the input stream. Unbraced tokens count as one element as do each token group *{...}*. This process will ignore any unprotected spaces within *tokens*. See also `\tl_length:N`. This function requires three expansions, giving an *integer denotation*.

---

<code>\tl_length:N</code>	★	<code>\tl_length:N {&lt;tl var&gt;}</code>
---------------------------	---	--

<code>\tl_length:c</code>	★
---------------------------	---

---

Updated: 2011-08-13
---------------------

---

Counts the number of token groups in the  $\langle tl\ var \rangle$  and leaves this information in the input stream. Unbraced tokens count as one element as do each token group  $\{ \dots \}$ . This process will ignore any unprotected spaces within  $\langle tokens \rangle$ . See also `\tl_length:n`. This function requires three expansions, giving an  $\langle integer\ denotation \rangle$ .

---

<code>\tl_reverse:n</code>	★	<code>\tl_reverse:n {&lt;token list&gt;}</code>
----------------------------	---	---

<code>\tl_reverse:(V o)</code>	★
--------------------------------	---

---

Updated: 2012-01-08
---------------------

---

Reverses the order of the  $\langle items \rangle$  in the  $\langle token\ list \rangle$ , so that  $\langle item1 \rangle \langle item2 \rangle \langle item3 \rangle \dots \langle item_n \rangle$  becomes  $\langle item_n \rangle \dots \langle item3 \rangle \langle item2 \rangle \langle item1 \rangle$ . This process will preserve unprotected space within the  $\langle token\ list \rangle$ . Tokens are not reversed within braced token groups, which keep their outer set of braces. In situations where performance is important, consider `\tl_reverse_items:n`. See also `\tl_reverse:N`.

**TeXhackers note:** The result is returned within the `\unexpanded` primitive (`\exp_not:n`), which means that the token list will not expand further when appearing in an x-type argument expansion.

---

<code>\tl_reverse:N</code>	<code>\tl_reverse:N {&lt;tl var&gt;}</code>
----------------------------	---

<code>\tl_reverse:c</code>
----------------------------

<code>\tl_greverse:N</code>
-----------------------------

<code>\tl_greverse:c</code>
-----------------------------

---

Updated: 2012-01-08
---------------------

---

Reverses the order of the  $\langle items \rangle$  stored in  $\langle tl\ var \rangle$ , so that  $\langle item1 \rangle \langle item2 \rangle \langle item3 \rangle \dots \langle item_n \rangle$  becomes  $\langle item_n \rangle \dots \langle item3 \rangle \langle item2 \rangle \langle item1 \rangle$ . This process will preserve unprotected spaces within the  $\langle token\ list\ variable \rangle$ . Braced token groups are copied without reversing the order of tokens, but keep the outer set of braces. See also `\tl_reverse:n`.

---

<code>\tl_reverse_items:n</code>	★	<code>\tl_reverse_items:n {&lt;token list&gt;}</code>
----------------------------------	---	---

---

New: 2012-01-08
-----------------

---

Reverses the order of the  $\langle items \rangle$  stored in  $\langle tl\ var \rangle$ , so that  $\{ \langle item1 \rangle \} \{ \langle item2 \rangle \} \{ \langle item3 \rangle \} \dots \{ \langle item_n \rangle \}$  becomes  $\{ \langle item_n \rangle \} \dots \{ \langle item3 \rangle \} \{ \langle item2 \rangle \} \{ \langle item1 \rangle \}$ . This process will remove any unprotected space within the  $\langle token\ list \rangle$ . Braced token groups are copied without reversing the order of tokens, and keep the outer set of braces. Items which are initially not braced are copied with braces in the result. In cases where preserving spaces is important, consider `\tl_reverse:n` or `\tl_reverse_tokens:n`.

**TeXhackers note:** The result is returned within the `\unexpanded` primitive (`\exp_not:n`), which means that the token list will not expand further when appearing in an x-type argument expansion.

---

<code>\tl_trim_spaces:n</code>	★	<code>\tl_trim_spaces:n &lt;token list&gt;</code>
--------------------------------	---	---

---

New: 2011-07-09
-----------------

Updated: 2011-08-13
---------------------

---

Removes any leading and trailing explicit space characters from the  $\langle token\ list \rangle$  and leaves the result in the input stream. This process requires two expansions.

**TeXhackers note:** The result is returned within the `\unexpanded` primitive (`\exp_not:n`), which means that the token list will not expand further when appearing in an x-type argument expansion.

---

`\tl_trim_spaces:N`  
`\tl_trim_spaces:c`  
`\tl_gtrim_spaces:N`  
`\tl_gtrim_spaces:c`

---

New: 2011-07-09

`\tl_trim_spaces:N`  $\langle \text{tl var} \rangle$

Removes any leading and trailing explicit space characters from the content of the  $\langle \text{tl var} \rangle$ .

## 89 The first token from a token list

Functions which deal with either only the very first token of a token list or everything except the first token.

---

`\tl_head:n` ★  
`\tl_head:(V|v|f)` ★

---

Updated: 2012-01-08

`\tl_head:n`  $\{ \langle \text{tokens} \rangle \}$

Leaves in the input stream the first non-space token from the  $\langle \text{tokens} \rangle$ . Any leading space tokens will be discarded, and thus for example

`\tl_head:n`  $\{ \text{ abc } \}$

and

`\tl_head:n`  $\{ \sim \text{ abc } \}$

will both leave `a` in the input stream. An empty list of  $\langle \text{tokens} \rangle$  or one which consists only of space (category code 10) tokens will result in `\tl_head:n` leaving nothing in the input stream.

**T<sub>E</sub>Xhackers note:** The result is returned within the `\unexpanded` primitive (`\exp_not:n`), which means that the token list will not expand further when appearing in an x-type argument expansion.

---

`\tl_head:w` ★

---

`\tl_head:w`  $\langle \text{tokens} \rangle$  `\q_stop`

Leaves in the input stream the first non-space token from the  $\langle \text{tokens} \rangle$ . An empty list of  $\langle \text{tokens} \rangle$  or one which consists only of space (category code 10) tokens will result in an error, and thus  $\langle \text{tokens} \rangle$  must *not* be “blank” as determined by `\tl_if_blank:n(TF)`. This function requires only a single expansion, and thus is suitable for use within an o-type expansion. In general, `\tl_head:n` should be preferred if the number of expansions is not critical.



---

<code>\tl_tail:n</code> ★	<code>\tl_tail:n {⟨tokens⟩}</code>
<code>\tl_tail:(V v f)</code> ★	Discards the all leading space tokens and the first non-space token in the <i>⟨tokens⟩</i> , and leaves the remaining tokens in the input stream. Thus for example
Updated: 2012-01-08	

---

`\tl_tail:n { abc }`

and

`\tl_tail:n { ~ abc }`

will both leave `bc` in the input stream. An empty list of *⟨tokens⟩* or one which consists only of space (category code 10) tokens will result in `\tl_tail:n` leaving nothing in the input stream.

**TeXhackers note:** The result is returned within the `\unexpanded` primitive (`\exp_not:n`), which means that the token list will not expand further when appearing in an x-type argument expansion.

---

<code>\tl_tail:w</code> ★	<code>\tl_tail:w {⟨tokens⟩} \q_stop</code>
	Discards the all leading space tokens and the first non-space token in the <i>⟨tokens⟩</i> , and leaves the remaining tokens in the input stream. An empty list of <i>⟨tokens⟩</i> or one which consists only of space (category code 10) tokens will result in an error, and thus <i>⟨tokens⟩</i> must <i>not</i> be “blank” as determined by <code>\tl_if_blank:n(TF)</code> . This function requires only a single expansion, and thus is suitable for use within an o-type expansion. In general, <code>\tl_tail:n</code> should be preferred if the number of expansions is not critical.

---



---

<code>\str_head:n</code> ★	<code>\str_head:n {⟨tokens⟩}</code>
<code>\str_tail:n</code> ★	<code>\str_tail:n {⟨tokens⟩}</code>
New: 2011-08-10	Converts the <i>⟨tokens⟩</i> into a string, as described for <code>\tl_to_str:n</code> . The <code>\str_head:n</code> function then leaves the first character of this string in the input stream. The <code>\str_tail:n</code> function leaves all characters except the first in the input stream. The first character may be a space. If the <i>⟨tokens⟩</i> argument is entirely empty, nothing is left in the input stream.

---



---

<code>\tl_if_head_eq_catcode_p:nN</code> ★	<code>\tl_if_head_eq_catcode_p:nN {⟨token list⟩} ⟨test token⟩</code>
<code>\tl_if_head_eq_catcode:nNTF</code> ★	<code>\tl_if_head_eq_catcode:nNTF {⟨token list⟩} ⟨test token⟩</code>
	<code>{⟨true code⟩} {⟨false code⟩}</code>
Updated: 2011-08-10	

---

Tests if the first *⟨token⟩* in the *⟨token list⟩* has the same category code as the *⟨test token⟩*. In the case where *⟨token list⟩* is empty, its head is considered to be `\q_nil`, and the test will be true if *⟨test token⟩* is a control sequence.

---

<code>\tl_if_head_eq_charcode_p:nN</code>	★	<code>\tl_if_head_eq_charcode_p:nN</code>	{ <i>&lt;token list&gt;</i> }	<i>&lt;test token&gt;</i>
<code>\tl_if_head_eq_charcode_p:fN</code>	★	<code>\tl_if_head_eq_charcode:nNTF</code>	{ <i>&lt;token list&gt;</i> }	<i>&lt;test token&gt;</i>
<code>\tl_if_head_eq_charcode:nNTF</code>	★		{ <i>&lt;true code&gt;</i> }	{ <i>&lt;false code&gt;</i> }
<code>\tl_if_head_eq_charcode:fNTF</code>	★			

---

Updated: 2011-08-10

---

Tests if the first *<token>* in the *<token list>* has the same character code as the *<test token>*. In the case where *<token list>* is empty, its head is considered to be `\q_nil`, and the test will be true if *<test token>* is a control sequence.

---

<code>\tl_if_head_eq_meaning_p:nN</code>	★	<code>\tl_if_head_eq_meaning_p:nN</code>	{ <i>&lt;token list&gt;</i> }	<i>&lt;test token&gt;</i>
<code>\tl_if_head_eq_meaning:nNTF</code>	★	<code>\tl_if_head_eq_meaning:nNTF</code>	{ <i>&lt;token list&gt;</i> }	<i>&lt;test token&gt;</i>
			{ <i>&lt;true code&gt;</i> }	{ <i>&lt;false code&gt;</i> }

---

Updated: 2011-08-10

---

Tests if the first *<token>* in the *<token list>* has the same meaning as the *<test token>*. In the case where *<token list>* is empty, its head is considered to be `\q_nil`, and the test will be true if *<test token>* has the same meaning as `\q_nil`.

---

<code>\tl_if_head_group_p:n</code>	★	<code>\tl_if_head_group_p:n</code>	{ <i>&lt;token list&gt;</i> }
<code>\tl_if_head_group:nTF</code>	★	<code>\tl_if_head_group:nTF</code>	{ <i>&lt;token list&gt;</i> } { <i>&lt;true code&gt;</i> } { <i>&lt;false code&gt;</i> }

---

Updated: 2011-08-11

---

Tests if the first *<token>* in the *<token list>* is an explicit begin-group character (with category code 1 and any character code), in other words, if the *<token list>* starts with a brace group. In particular, the test is false if the *<token list>* starts with an implicit token such as `\c_group_begin_token`, or if it empty. This function is useful to implement actions on token lists on a token by token basis.

---

<code>\tl_if_head_N_type_p:n</code>	★	<code>\tl_if_head_N_type_p:n</code>	{ <i>&lt;token list&gt;</i> }
<code>\tl_if_head_N_type:nTF</code>	★	<code>\tl_if_head_N_type:nTF</code>	{ <i>&lt;token list&gt;</i> } { <i>&lt;true code&gt;</i> } { <i>&lt;false code&gt;</i> }

---

New: 2011-08-11

---

Tests if the first *<token>* in the *<token list>* is a normal N-type argument. In other words, it is neither an explicit space character (with category code 10 and character code 32) nor an explicit begin-group character (with category code 1 and any character code). An empty argument yields false, as it does not have a “normal” first token. This function is useful to implement actions on token lists on a token by token basis.

---

<code>\tl_if_head_space_p:n</code>	★	<code>\tl_if_head_space_p:n</code>	{ <i>&lt;token list&gt;</i> }
<code>\tl_if_head_space:nTF</code>	★	<code>\tl_if_head_space:nTF</code>	{ <i>&lt;token list&gt;</i> } { <i>&lt;true code&gt;</i> } { <i>&lt;false code&gt;</i> }

---

Updated: 2011-08-11

---

Tests if the first *<token>* in the *<token list>* is an explicit space character (with category code 10 and character code 32). If *<token list>* starts with an implicit token such as `\c_space_token`, the test will yield false, as well as if the argument is empty. This function is useful to implement actions on token lists on a token by token basis.

**T<sub>E</sub>Xhackers note:** When T<sub>E</sub>X reads a character of category code 10 for the first time, it is converted to an explicit space token, with character code 32, regardless of the initial character code. “Funny” spaces with a different category code, can be produced using `\lowercase`. Explicit spaces are also produced as a result of `\token_to_str:N`, `\tl_to_str:n`, etc.

## 90 Viewing token lists

---

<code>\tl_show:N</code>	<code>\tl_show:N &lt;tl var&gt;</code>
<code>\tl_show:c</code>	Displays the content of the <i>&lt;tl var&gt;</i> on the terminal.

---

**T<sub>E</sub>Xhackers note:** `\tl_show:N` is the T<sub>E</sub>X primitive `\show`.

---

<code>\tl_show:n</code>	<code>\tl_show:n &lt;token list&gt;</code>
	Displays the <i>&lt;token list&gt;</i> on the terminal.

---

**T<sub>E</sub>Xhackers note:** `\tl_show:n` is the  $\varepsilon$ -T<sub>E</sub>X primitive `\showtokens`.

## 91 Constant token lists

---

<code>\c_job_name_tl</code>	Constant that gets the “job name” assigned when T <sub>E</sub> X starts.
-----------------------------	--

---

Updated: 2011-08-18

**T<sub>E</sub>Xhackers note:** This is the new name for the primitive `\jobname`. It is a constant that is set by T<sub>E</sub>X and should not be overwritten by the package.

---

<code>\c_empty_tl</code>	Constant that is always empty.
--------------------------	--------------------------------

---

---

<code>\c_space_tl</code>	A space token contained in a token list (compare this with <code>\c_space_token</code> ). For use where an explicit space is required.
--------------------------	--

---

## 92 Scratch token lists

---

<code>\l_tmpa_tl</code> <code>\l_tmpb_tl</code>	Scratch token lists for local assignment. These are never used by the kernel code, and so are safe for use with any L <sup>A</sup> T <sub>E</sub> X3-defined function. However, they may be overwritten by other non-kernel code and so should only be used for short-term storage.
--	---

---

---

<code>\g_tmpa_tl</code> <code>\g_tmpb_tl</code>	Scratch token lists for global assignment. These are never used by the kernel code, and so are safe for use with any L <sup>A</sup> T <sub>E</sub> X3-defined function. However, they may be overwritten by other non-kernel code and so should only be used for short-term storage.
--	--

---

## 93 Experimental token list functions

---

<code>\tl_reverse_tokens:n</code> ★	<code>\tl_reverse_tokens:n {&lt;tokens&gt;}</code>
-------------------------------------	--

---

New: 2012-01-08

This function, which works directly on T<sub>E</sub>X tokens, reverses the order of the *<tokens>*: the first will be the last and the last will become first. Spaces are preserved. The reversal also operates within brace groups, but the braces themselves are not exchanged, as this would lead to an unbalanced token list. For instance, `\tl_reverse_tokens:n {a~{b()}}` leaves `{() (b)~a` in the input stream. This function requires two steps of expansion.

**T<sub>E</sub>Xhackers note:** The result is returned within the `\unexpanded` primitive (`\exp_not:n`), which means that the token list will not expand further when appearing in an x-type argument expansion.

---

<code>\tl_length_tokens:n</code> ★	<code>\tl_length_tokens:n {&lt;tokens&gt;}</code>
------------------------------------	---

---

New: 2011-08-11

Counts the number of T<sub>E</sub>X tokens in the *<tokens>* and leaves this information in the input stream. Every token, including spaces and braces, contributes one to the total; thus for instance, the length of `a~{bc}` is 6. This function requires three expansions, giving an *<integer denotation>*.

---

<code>\tl_expandable_uppercase:n</code> ★	<code>\tl_expandable_uppercase:n {&lt;tokens&gt;}</code>
<code>\tl_expandable_lowercase:n</code> ★	<code>\tl_expandable_lowercase:n {&lt;tokens&gt;}</code>

---

New: 2012-01-08

The `\tl_expandable_uppercase:n` function works through all of the *<tokens>*, replacing characters in the range `a-z` (with arbitrary category code) by the corresponding letter in the range `A-Z`, with category code 11 (letter). Similarly, `\tl_expandable_lowercase:n` replaces characters in the range `A-Z` by letters in the range `a-z`, and leaves other tokens unchanged. This function requires two steps of expansion.

**T<sub>E</sub>Xhackers note:** Begin-group and end-group characters are normalized and become `{` and `}`, respectively. The result is returned within the `\unexpanded` primitive (`\exp_not:n`), which means that the token list will not expand further when appearing in an x-type argument expansion.

<hr/>	
<code>\tl_item:nn</code> ★	<code>\tl_item:nn {⟨token list⟩} {⟨integer expression⟩}</code>
<code>\tl_item:(Nn cn)</code> ★	
<hr/>	
New: 2011-11-21	
Updated: 2012-01-08	
<hr/>	

Indexing items in the *⟨token list⟩* from 0 on the left, this function will evaluate the *⟨integer expression⟩* and leave the appropriate item from the *⟨token list⟩* in the input stream. If the *⟨integer expression⟩* is negative, indexing occurs from the right of the token list, starting at  $-1$  for the right-most item. If the index is out of bounds, then the function expands to nothing.

**T<sub>E</sub>Xhackers note:** The result is returned within the `\unexpanded` primitive (`\exp_not:n`), which means that the *⟨item⟩* will not expand further when appearing in an x-type argument expansion.

## 94 Internal functions

<hr/>	
<code>\q_tl_act_mark</code>	Quarks which are only used for the particular purposes of <code>\tl_act...</code> functions.
<code>\q_tl_act_stop</code>	
<hr/>	
<hr/>	
<code>\tl_to_str_active_safe:Nx</code>	<code>\tl_to_str_active_safe:Nx ⟨tl var⟩ {⟨tokens⟩}</code>
<hr/>	
New: 2012-01-25	
<hr/>	

Exhaustively-expands the *⟨tokens⟩* with the exception of any category *⟨active⟩* (cat-code 12) tokens, which are not expanded. The resulting *⟨expanded tokens⟩* are then converted to a string as described for `\tl_to_str:n`. The list of *⟨active⟩* tokens is taken from `\l_char_active_seq`.

## Part XII

# The l3seq package

## Sequences and stacks

L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X3 implements a “sequence” data type, which contain an ordered list of entries which may contain any *⟨balanced text⟩*. It is possible to map functions to sequences such that the function is applied to every item in the sequence.

Sequences are also used to implement stack functions in L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X3. This is achieved using a number of dedicated stack functions.

## 95 Creating and initialising sequences

---

`\seq_new:N`  
`\seq_new:c`

---

`\seq_new:N` *⟨sequence⟩*

Creates a new *⟨sequence⟩* or raises an error if the name is already taken. The declaration is global. The *⟨sequence⟩* will initially contain no items.

---

`\seq_clear:N`  
`\seq_clear:c`  
`\seq_gclear:N`  
`\seq_gclear:c`

---

`\seq_clear:N` *⟨sequence⟩*

Clears all items from the *⟨sequence⟩*.

---

`\seq_clear_new:N`  
`\seq_clear_new:c`  
`\seq_gclear_new:N`  
`\seq_gclear_new:c`

---

`\seq_clear_new:N` *⟨sequence⟩*

Ensures that the *⟨sequence⟩* exists globally by applying `\seq_new:N` if necessary, then applies `\seq_(g)clear:N` to leave the *⟨sequence⟩* empty.

---

`\seq_set_eq:NN`  
`\seq_set_eq:(cN|Nc|cc)`  
`\seq_gset_eq:NN`  
`\seq_gset_eq:(cN|Nc|cc)`

---

`\seq_set_eq:NN` *⟨sequence1⟩* *⟨sequence2⟩*

Sets the content of *⟨sequence1⟩* equal to that of *⟨sequence2⟩*.

---

`\seq_set_split:Nnn`  
`\seq_gset_split:Nnn`

---

`\seq_set_split:Nnn` *⟨sequence⟩* *{⟨delimiter⟩}* *{⟨token list⟩}*

Splits the *⟨token list⟩* into *⟨items⟩* separated by *⟨delimiter⟩*, and assigns the result to the *⟨sequence⟩*. Spaces on both sides of each *⟨item⟩* are ignored, then one set of outer braces is removed (if any); this space trimming behaviour is identical to that of l3clist functions. Empty *⟨items⟩* are preserved by `\seq_set_split:Nnn`, and can be removed afterwards using `\seq_remove_all:Nn` *⟨sequence⟩* *{⟨⟩}*. The *⟨delimiter⟩* may not contain `{`, `}` or `#` (assuming T<sub>E</sub>X’s normal category code régime). If the *⟨delimiter⟩* is empty, the *⟨token list⟩* is split into *⟨items⟩* as a *⟨token list⟩*.

New: 2011-08-15  
Updated: 2011-12-07

---

<hr/>	<code>\seq_concat:NNN</code>	<code>\seq_concat:NNN</code> $\langle sequence1 \rangle$ $\langle sequence2 \rangle$ $\langle sequence3 \rangle$
<code>\seq_concat:ccc</code>		
<code>\seq_gconcat:NNN</code>		Concatenates the content of $\langle sequence2 \rangle$ and $\langle sequence3 \rangle$ together and saves the result in $\langle sequence1 \rangle$ . The items in $\langle sequence2 \rangle$ will be placed at the left side of the new sequence.
<code>\seq_gconcat:ccc</code>		

## 96 Appending data to sequences

<hr/>	<code>\seq_put_left:Nn</code>	<code>\seq_put_left:Nn</code> $\langle sequence \rangle$ $\{ \langle item \rangle \}$
<code>\seq_put_left:(NV Nv No Nx cn cV cv co cx)</code>		
<code>\seq_gput_left:Nn</code>		
<code>\seq_gput_left:(NV Nv No Nx cn cV cv co cx)</code>		

Appends the  $\langle item \rangle$  to the left of the  $\langle sequence \rangle$ .

<hr/>	<code>\seq_put_right:Nn</code>	<code>\seq_put_right:Nn</code> $\langle sequence \rangle$ $\{ \langle item \rangle \}$
<code>\seq_put_right:(NV Nv No Nx cn cV cv co cx)</code>		
<code>\seq_gput_right:Nn</code>		
<code>\seq_gput_right:(NV Nv No Nx cn cV cv co cx)</code>		

Appends the  $\langle item \rangle$  to the right of the  $\langle sequence \rangle$ .

## 97 Recovering items from sequences

Items can be recovered from either the left or the right of sequences. For implementation reasons, the actions at the left of the sequence are faster than those acting on the right. These functions all assign the recovered material locally, *i.e.* setting the  $\langle token list variable \rangle$  used with `\tl_set:Nn` and *never* `\tl_gset:Nn`.

<hr/>	<code>\seq_get_left:NN</code>	<code>\seq_get_left:NN</code> $\langle sequence \rangle$ $\langle token list variable \rangle$
<code>\seq_get_left:cN</code>		
		Stores the left-most item from a $\langle sequence \rangle$ in the $\langle token list variable \rangle$ without removing it from the $\langle sequence \rangle$ . The $\langle token list variable \rangle$ is assigned locally. If $\langle sequence \rangle$ is empty an error will be raised.

<hr/>	<code>\seq_get_right:NN</code>	<code>\seq_get_right:NN</code> $\langle sequence \rangle$ $\langle token list variable \rangle$
<code>\seq_get_right:cN</code>		
		Stores the right-most item from a $\langle sequence \rangle$ in the $\langle token list variable \rangle$ without removing it from the $\langle sequence \rangle$ . The $\langle token list variable \rangle$ is assigned locally. If $\langle sequence \rangle$ is empty an error will be raised.

<hr/>	<code>\seq_pop_left:NN</code>	<code>\seq_pop_left:NN</code> $\langle sequence \rangle$ $\langle token list variable \rangle$
<code>\seq_pop_left:cN</code>		
		Pops the left-most item from a $\langle sequence \rangle$ into the $\langle token list variable \rangle$ , <i>i.e.</i> removes the item from the sequence and stores it in the $\langle token list variable \rangle$ . Both of the variables are assigned locally. If $\langle sequence \rangle$ is empty an error will be raised.

---

```
\seq_gpop_left:NN
\seq_gpop_left:cN
```

---

```
\seq_gpop_left:NN <sequence> <token list variable>
```

Pops the left-most item from a *<sequence>* into the *<token list variable>*, *i.e.* removes the item from the sequence and stores it in the *<token list variable>*. The *<sequence>* is modified globally, while the assignment of the *<token list variable>* is local. If *<sequence>* is empty an error will be raised.

---

```
\seq_pop_right:NN
\seq_pop_right:cN
```

---

```
\seq_pop_right:NN <sequence> <token list variable>
```

Pops the right-most item from a *<sequence>* into the *<token list variable>*, *i.e.* removes the item from the sequence and stores it in the *<token list variable>*. Both of the variables are assigned locally. If *<sequence>* is empty an error will be raised.

---

```
\seq_gpop_right:NN
\seq_gpop_right:cN
```

---

```
\seq_gpop_right:NN <sequence> <token list variable>
```

Pops the right-most item from a *<sequence>* into the *<token list variable>*, *i.e.* removes the item from the sequence and stores it in the *<token list variable>*. The *<sequence>* is modified globally, while the assignment of the *<token list variable>* is local. If *<sequence>* is empty an error will be raised.

## 98 Modifying sequences

While sequences are normally used as ordered lists, it may be necessary to modify the content. The functions here may be used to update sequences, while retaining the order of the unaffected entries.

---

```
\seq_remove_duplicates:N
\seq_remove_duplicates:c
\seq_gremove_duplicates:N
\seq_gremove_duplicates:c
```

---

```
\seq_remove_duplicates:N <sequence>
```

Removes duplicate items from the *<sequence>*, leaving the left most copy of each item in the *<sequence>*. The *<item>* comparison takes place on a token basis, as for `\tl_if_eq:nn(TF)`.

**T<sub>E</sub>Xhackers note:** This function iterates through every item in the *<sequence>* and does a comparison with the *<items>* already checked. It is therefore relatively slow with large sequences.

---

```
\seq_remove_all:Nn
\seq_remove_all:cn
\seq_gremove_all:Nn
\seq_gremove_all:cn
```

---

```
\seq_remove_all:Nn <sequence> {<item>}
```

Removes every occurrence of *<item>* from the *<sequence>*. The *<item>* comparison takes place on a token basis, as for `\tl_if_eq:nn(TF)`.

## 99 Sequence conditionals

---

```
\seq_if_empty_p:N ★
\seq_if_empty_p:c ★
\seq_if_empty:NTF ★
\seq_if_empty:cTF ★
```

---

```
\seq_if_empty_p:N <sequence>
```

```
\seq_if_empty:NNTF <sequence> {<true code>} {<false code>}
```

Tests if the *<sequence>* is empty (containing no items).



---

<code>\seq_if_in:NnTF</code>	<code>\seq_if_in:NnTF &lt;sequence&gt; {&lt;item&gt;} {&lt;true code&gt;} {&lt;false code&gt;}</code>
<code>\seq_if_in:(NV Nv No Nx cn cV cv co cx)TF</code>	

---

Tests if the *<item>* is present in the *<sequence>*.

## 100 Mapping to sequences

---

<code>\seq_map_function:NN</code> ☆	<code>\seq_map_function:NN &lt;sequence&gt; &lt;function&gt;</code>
<code>\seq_map_function:cN</code> ☆	

---

Applies *<function>* to every *<item>* stored in the *<sequence>*. The *<function>* will receive one argument for each iteration. The *<items>* are returned from left to right. The function `\seq_map_inline:Nn` is in general more efficient than `\seq_map_function:NN`. One mapping may be nested inside another.

---

<code>\seq_map_inline:Nn</code>	<code>\seq_map_inline:Nn &lt;sequence&gt; {&lt;inline function&gt;}</code>
<code>\seq_map_inline:cn</code>	

---

Applies *<inline function>* to every *<item>* stored within the *<sequence>*. The *<inline function>* should consist of code which will receive the *<item>* as #1. One in line mapping can be nested inside another. The *<items>* are returned from left to right.

---

<code>\seq_map_variable:NNn</code>	<code>\seq_map_variable:NNn &lt;sequence&gt; &lt;tl var.&gt; {&lt;function using tl var.&gt;}</code>
<code>\seq_map_variable:(Ncn cNn ccn)</code>	

---

Stores each entry in the *<sequence>* in turn in the *<tl var.>* and applies the *<function using tl var.>* The *<function>* will usually consist of code making use of the *<tl var.>*, but this is not enforced. One variable mapping can be nested inside another. The *<items>* are returned from left to right.

---

<code>\seq_map_break</code> ☆	<code>\seq_map_break:</code>
-------------------------------	------------------------------

---

Used to terminate a `\seq_map...` function before all entries in the *<sequence>* have been processed. This will normally take place within a conditional statement, for example

```
\seq_map_inline:Nn \l_my_seq
{
  \str_if_eq:nnTF { #1 } { bingo }
  { \seq_map_break: }
  {
    % Do something useful
  }
}
```

Use outside of a `\seq_map...` scenario will lead to low level T<sub>E</sub>X errors.

**T<sub>E</sub>Xhackers note:** When the mapping is broken, additional tokens may be inserted by the internal macro `\prg_break_point:n` before further items are taken from the input stream. This will depend on the design of the mapping function.

---

`\seq_map_break:n` ☆

---

`\seq_map_break:n {⟨tokens⟩}`

Used to terminate a `\seq_map...` function before all entries in the *⟨sequence⟩* have been processed, inserting the *⟨tokens⟩* after the mapping has ended. This will normally take place within a conditional statement, for example

```
\seq_map_inline:Nn \l_my_seq
{
  \str_if_eq:nnTF { #1 } { bingo }
  { \seq_map_break:n { <tokens> } }
  {
    % Do something useful
  }
}
```

Use outside of a `\seq_map...` scenario will lead to low level T<sub>E</sub>X errors.

**T<sub>E</sub>Xhackers note:** When the mapping is broken, additional tokens may be inserted by the internal macro `\prg_break_point:n` before the *⟨tokens⟩* are inserted into the input stream. This will depend on the design of the mapping function.

## 101 Sequences as stacks

Sequences can be used as stacks, where data is pushed to and popped from the top of the sequence. (The left of a sequence is the top, for performance reasons.) The stack functions for sequences are not intended to be mixed with the general ordered data functions detailed in the previous section: a sequence should either be used as an ordered data type or as a stack, but not in both ways.

---

`\seq_get:NN`  
`\seq_get:cN`

---

`\seq_get:NN ⟨sequence⟩ ⟨token list variable⟩`

Reads the top item from a *⟨sequence⟩* into the *⟨token list variable⟩* without removing it from the *⟨sequence⟩*. The *⟨token list variable⟩* is assigned locally. If *⟨sequence⟩* is empty an error will be raised.

---

`\seq_pop:NN`  
`\seq_pop:cN`

---

`\seq_pop:NN ⟨sequence⟩ ⟨token list variable⟩`

Pops the top item from a *⟨sequence⟩* into the *⟨token list variable⟩*. Both of the variables are assigned locally. If *⟨sequence⟩* is empty an error will be raised.

---

`\seq_gpop:NN`  
`\seq_gpop:cN`

---

`\seq_gpop:NN ⟨sequence⟩ ⟨token list variable⟩`

Pops the top item from a *⟨sequence⟩* into the *⟨token list variable⟩*. The *⟨sequence⟩* is modified globally, while the *⟨token list variable⟩* is assigned locally. If *⟨sequence⟩* is empty an error will be raised.

---

<code>\seq_push:Nn</code> <code>\seq_push:(NV Nv No Nx cn cV cv co cx)</code> <code>\seq_gpush:Nn</code> <code>\seq_gpush:(NV Nv No Nx cn cV cv co cx)</code>	<code>\seq_push:Nn &lt;sequence&gt; {(item)}</code>
--	---

---

Adds the  $\{(item)\}$  to the top of the  $\langle sequence \rangle$ .

## 102 Viewing sequences

---

<code>\seq_show:N</code> <code>\seq_show:c</code>	<code>\seq_show:N &lt;sequence&gt;</code> Displays the entries in the $\langle sequence \rangle$ in the terminal.
--	--

---

## 103 Experimental sequence functions

This section contains functions which may or may not be retained, depending on how useful they are found to be.

---

<code>\seq_get_left:NNTF</code> <code>\seq_get_left:cNTF</code>	<code>\seq_get_left:NNTF &lt;sequence&gt; &lt;token list variable&gt; {(true code)} {(false code)}</code> If the $\langle sequence \rangle$ is empty, leaves the $\langle false code \rangle$ in the input stream and leaves the $\langle token list variable \rangle$ unchanged. If the $\langle sequence \rangle$ is non-empty, stores the left-most item from a $\langle sequence \rangle$ in the $\langle token list variable \rangle$ without removing it from a $\langle sequence \rangle$ . The $\langle token list variable \rangle$ is assigned locally.
--	--

---



---

<code>\seq_get_right:NNTF</code> <code>\seq_get_right:cNTF</code>	<code>\seq_get_right:NNTF &lt;sequence&gt; &lt;token list variable&gt; {(true code)} {(false code)}</code> If the $\langle sequence \rangle$ is empty, leaves the $\langle false code \rangle$ in the input stream and leaves the $\langle token list variable \rangle$ unchanged. If the $\langle sequence \rangle$ is non-empty, stores the right-most item from a $\langle sequence \rangle$ in the $\langle token list variable \rangle$ without removing it from a $\langle sequence \rangle$ . The $\langle token list variable \rangle$ is assigned locally.
--	--

---



---

<code>\seq_pop_left:NNTF</code> <code>\seq_pop_left:cNTF</code>	<code>\seq_pop_left:NNTF &lt;sequence&gt; &lt;token list variable&gt; {(true code)} {(false code)}</code> If the $\langle sequence \rangle$ is empty, leaves the $\langle false code \rangle$ in the input stream and leaves the $\langle token list variable \rangle$ unchanged. If the $\langle sequence \rangle$ is non-empty, pops the left-most item from a $\langle sequence \rangle$ in the $\langle token list variable \rangle$ , <i>i.e.</i> removes the item from a $\langle sequence \rangle$ . Both the $\langle sequence \rangle$ and the $\langle token list variable \rangle$ are assigned locally.
--	--

---



---

<code>\seq_gpop_left:NNTF</code> <code>\seq_gpop_left:cNTF</code>	<code>\seq_gpop_left:NNTF &lt;sequence&gt; &lt;token list variable&gt; {(true code)} {(false code)}</code> If the $\langle sequence \rangle$ is empty, leaves the $\langle false code \rangle$ in the input stream and leaves the $\langle token list variable \rangle$ unchanged. If the $\langle sequence \rangle$ is non-empty, pops the left-most item from a $\langle sequence \rangle$ in the $\langle token list variable \rangle$ , <i>i.e.</i> removes the item from a $\langle sequence \rangle$ . The $\langle sequence \rangle$ is modified globally, while the $\langle token list variable \rangle$ is assigned locally.
--	---

---

---

$\backslash\text{seq\_pop\_right:NNTF}$ $\backslash\text{seq\_pop\_right:cNTF}$	$\backslash\text{seq\_pop\_right:NNTF}$ $\langle\text{sequence}\rangle$ $\langle\text{token list variable}\rangle$ $\{\langle\text{true code}\rangle\}$ $\{\langle\text{false code}\rangle\}$ If the $\langle\text{sequence}\rangle$ is empty, leaves the $\langle\text{false code}\rangle$ in the input stream and leaves the $\langle\text{token list variable}\rangle$ unchanged. If the $\langle\text{sequence}\rangle$ is non-empty, pops the right-most item from a $\langle\text{sequence}\rangle$ in the $\langle\text{token list variable}\rangle$ , <i>i.e.</i> removes the item from a $\langle\text{sequence}\rangle$ . Both the $\langle\text{sequence}\rangle$ and the $\langle\text{token list variable}\rangle$ are assigned locally.
--	--

---

$\backslash\text{seq\_gpop\_right:NNTF}$ $\backslash\text{seq\_gpop\_right:cNTF}$	$\backslash\text{seq\_gpop\_right:NNTF}$ $\langle\text{sequence}\rangle$ $\langle\text{token list variable}\rangle$ $\{\langle\text{true code}\rangle\}$ $\{\langle\text{false code}\rangle\}$ If the $\langle\text{sequence}\rangle$ is empty, leaves the $\langle\text{false code}\rangle$ in the input stream and leaves the $\langle\text{token list variable}\rangle$ unchanged. If the $\langle\text{sequence}\rangle$ is non-empty, pops the right-most item from a $\langle\text{sequence}\rangle$ in the $\langle\text{token list variable}\rangle$ , <i>i.e.</i> removes the item from a $\langle\text{sequence}\rangle$ . The $\langle\text{sequence}\rangle$ is modified globally, while the $\langle\text{token list variable}\rangle$ is assigned locally.
--	--

---

$\backslash\text{seq\_length:N}$ ☆ $\backslash\text{seq\_length:c}$ ☆	$\backslash\text{seq\_length:N}$ $\langle\text{sequence}\rangle$ Leaves the number of items in the $\langle\text{sequence}\rangle$ in the input stream as an $\langle\text{integer denotation}\rangle$ . The total number of items in a $\langle\text{sequence}\rangle$ will include those which are empty and duplicates, <i>i.e.</i> every item in a $\langle\text{sequence}\rangle$ is unique.
--	--

---

$\backslash\text{seq\_item:Nn}$ ☆ $\backslash\text{seq\_item:cn}$ ☆ Updated: 2012-01-08	$\backslash\text{seq\_item:Nn}$ $\langle\text{sequence}\rangle$ $\{\langle\text{integer expression}\rangle\}$ Indexing items in the $\langle\text{sequence}\rangle$ from 0 at the top (left), this function will evaluate the $\langle\text{integer expression}\rangle$ and leave the appropriate item from the sequence in the input stream. If the $\langle\text{integer expression}\rangle$ is negative, indexing occurs from the bottom (right) of the sequence. When the $\langle\text{integer expression}\rangle$ is larger than the number of items in the $\langle\text{sequence}\rangle$ (as calculated by $\backslash\text{seq\_length:N}$ ) then the function will expand to nothing.
---	---

---

**T<sub>E</sub>Xhackers note:** The result is returned within the  $\backslash\text{unexpanded}$  primitive ( $\backslash\text{exp\_not:n}$ ), which means that the  $\langle\text{item}\rangle$  will not expand further when appearing in an x-type argument expansion.

$\backslash\text{seq\_use:N}$ ☆ $\backslash\text{seq\_use:c}$ ☆	$\backslash\text{seq\_use:N}$ $\langle\text{sequence}\rangle$ Places each $\langle\text{item}\rangle$ in the $\langle\text{sequence}\rangle$ in turn in the input stream. This occurs in an expandable fashion, and is implemented as a mapping. This means that the process may be prematurely terminated using $\backslash\text{seq\_map\_break:}$ or $\backslash\text{seq\_map\_break:n}$ . The $\langle\text{items}\rangle$ in the $\langle\text{sequence}\rangle$ will be used from left (top) to right (bottom).
--	---

---

$\backslash\text{seq\_mapthread\_function:NNN}$ ☆ $\backslash\text{seq\_mapthread\_function:(NcN cNN ccN)}$ ☆	$\backslash\text{seq\_mapthread\_function:NNN}$ $\langle\text{seq1}\rangle$ $\langle\text{seq2}\rangle$ $\langle\text{function}\rangle$ Applies $\langle\text{function}\rangle$ to every pair of items $\langle\text{seq1-item}\rangle$ – $\langle\text{seq2-item}\rangle$ from the two sequences, returning items from both sequences from left to right. The $\langle\text{function}\rangle$ will receive two n-type arguments for each iteration. The mapping will terminate when the end of either sequence is reached ( <i>i.e.</i> whichever sequence has fewer items determines how many iterations occur).
--	---

---

---

<code>\seq_set_from_clist:NN</code>	<code>\seq_set_from_clist:NN &lt;sequence&gt; &lt;comma-list&gt;</code>
<code>\seq_set_from_clist:(cN Nc cc Nn cn)</code>	
<code>\seq_gset_from_clist:NN</code>	
<code>\seq_gset_from_clist:(cN Nc cc Nn cn)</code>	

---

Sets the  $\langle sequence \rangle$  within the current  $\text{\TeX}$  group to be equal to the content of the  $\langle comma-list \rangle$ .

---

<code>\seq_reverse:N</code>	<code>\seq_reverse:N &lt;sequence&gt;</code>
<code>\seq_greverse:N</code>	

---

New: 2011-11-22  
Updated: 2011-11-24

Reverses the order of items in the  $\langle sequence \rangle$ , and assigns the result to  $\langle sequence \rangle$ , locally or globally according to the variant chosen.

---

<code>\seq_set_filter:NNn</code>	<code>\seq_set_filter:NNn &lt;sequence1&gt; &lt;sequence2&gt; {\inline boolexpr}</code>
<code>\seq_gset_filter:NNn</code>	

---

New: 2011-12-22

Evaluates the  $\langle inline boolexpr \rangle$  for every  $\langle item \rangle$  stored within the  $\langle sequence2 \rangle$ . The  $\langle inline boolexpr \rangle$  will receive the  $\langle item \rangle$  as  $\#1$ . The sequence of all  $\langle items \rangle$  for which the  $\langle inline boolexpr \rangle$  evaluated to `true` is assigned to  $\langle sequence1 \rangle$ .

**$\text{\TeX}$ hackers note:** Contrarily to other mapping functions, `\seq_map_break:` cannot be used in this function, and will lead to low-level  $\text{\TeX}$  errors.

---

<code>\seq_set_map:NNn</code>	<code>\seq_set_map:NNn &lt;sequence1&gt; &lt;sequence2&gt; {\inline function}</code>
<code>\seq_gset_map:NNn</code>	

---

New: 2011-12-22

Applies  $\langle inline function \rangle$  to every  $\langle item \rangle$  stored within the  $\langle sequence2 \rangle$ . The  $\langle inline function \rangle$  should consist of code which will receive the  $\langle item \rangle$  as  $\#1$ . The sequence resulting from  $\text{x}$ -expanding  $\langle inline function \rangle$  applied to each  $\langle item \rangle$  is assigned to  $\langle sequence1 \rangle$ . As such, the code in  $\langle inline function \rangle$  should be expandable.

**$\text{\TeX}$ hackers note:** Contrarily to other mapping functions, `\seq_map_break:` cannot be used in this function, and will lead to low-level  $\text{\TeX}$  errors.

## 104 Internal sequence functions

---

<code>\seq_if_empty_err_break:N</code>	<code>\seq_if_empty_err_break:N &lt;sequence&gt;</code>
--	---

---

Tests if the  $\langle sequence \rangle$  is empty, and if so issues an error message before skipping over any tokens up to `\prg_break_point:n`. This function is used to avoid more serious errors which would otherwise occur if some internal functions were applied to an empty  $\langle sequence \rangle$ .

---

<code>\seq_item:n</code> ★	<code>\seq_item:n &lt;item&gt;</code>
----------------------------	---------------------------------------

---

The internal token used to begin each sequence entry. If expanded outside of a mapping or manipulation function, an error will be raised. The definition should always be set globally.

<u>\seq_push_item_def:n</u>	\seq_push_item_def:n {<code>}
<u>\seq_push_item_def:x</u>	Saves the definition of \seq_item:n and redefines it to accept one parameter and expand to <code>. This function should always be balanced by use of \seq_pop_item_def:.
<u>\seq_pop_item_def</u>	\seq_pop_item_def: Restores the definition of \seq_item:n most recently saved by \seq_push_item_def:n. This function should always be used in a balanced pair with \seq_push_item_def:n.
<u>\seq_break *</u>	\seq_break: Used to terminate sequence functions by gobbling all tokens up to \prg_break_point:n. This function is a copy of \seq_map_break:, but is used in situations which are not mappings.
<u>\seq_break:n *</u>	\seq_break:n {<tokens>} Used to terminate sequence functions by gobbling all tokens up to \prg_break_point:n, then inserting the <tokens> before continuing reading the input stream. This function is a copy of \seq_map_break:n, but is used in situations which are not mappings.

## Part XIII

# The l3clist package

## Comma separated lists

Comma lists contain ordered data where items can be added to the left or right end of the list. The resulting ordered list can then be mapped over using `\clist_map_function:NN`. Several items can be added at once, and spaces are removed from both sides of each item on input. Hence,

```
\clist_new:N \l_my_clist
\clist_put_left:Nn \l_my_clist { ~ a ~ , ~ {b} ~ }
\clist_put_right:Nn \l_my_clist { ~ { c ~ } , d }
```

results in `\l_my_clist` containing `a,{b},{c~},d`. Comma lists cannot contain empty items, thus

```
\clist_clear_new:N \l_my_clist
\clist_put_right:Nn \l_my_clist { , ~ , , }
\clist_if_empty:NTF \l_my_clist { true } { false }
```

will leave `true` in the input stream. To include an item which contains a comma, or starts or ends with a space, surround it with braces.

## 105 Creating and initialising comma lists

---

<code>\clist_new:N</code>	<code>\clist_new:N &lt;comma list&gt;</code>
---------------------------	--

<code>\clist_new:c</code>	Creates a new <i>&lt;comma list&gt;</i> or raises an error if the name is already taken. The declaration is global. The <i>&lt;comma list&gt;</i> will initially contain no items.
---------------------------	--

---

<code>\clist_clear:N</code>	<code>\clist_clear:N &lt;comma list&gt;</code>
-----------------------------	--

<code>\clist_clear:c</code>	Clears all items from the <i>&lt;comma list&gt;</i> .
<code>\clist_gclear:N</code>	

<code>\clist_gclear:c</code>
------------------------------

---

<code>\clist_clear_new:N</code>	<code>\clist_clear_new:N &lt;comma list&gt;</code>
---------------------------------	--

<code>\clist_clear_new:c</code>	Ensures that the <i>&lt;comma list&gt;</i> exists globally by applying <code>\clsit_new:N</code> if necessary, then applies <code>\clist_(g)clear:N</code> to leave the list empty.
<code>\clist_gclear_new:N</code>	
<code>\clist_gclear_new:c</code>	

---

<code>\clist_set_eq:NN</code>	<code>\clist_set_eq:NN &lt;comma list1&gt; &lt;comma list2&gt;</code>
-------------------------------	---

<code>\clist_set_eq:(cN Nc cc)</code>	Sets the content of <i>&lt;comma list1&gt;</i> equal to that of <i>&lt;comma list2&gt;</i> .
<code>\clist_gset_eq:NN</code>	
<code>\clist_gset_eq:(cN Nc cc)</code>	

---

<hr/>	
<code>\clist_concat:NNN</code>	<code>\clist_concat:NNN &lt;comma list1&gt; &lt;comma list2&gt; &lt;comma list3&gt;</code>
<code>\clist_concat:ccc</code>	
<code>\clist_gconcat:NNN</code>	Concatenates the content of <code>&lt;comma list2&gt;</code> and <code>&lt;comma list3&gt;</code> together and saves the result in <code>&lt;comma list1&gt;</code> . The items in <code>&lt;comma list2&gt;</code> will be placed at the left side of the new comma list.
<code>\clist_gconcat:ccc</code>	

## 106 Adding data to comma lists

<hr/>	
<code>\clist_set:Nn</code>	<code>\clist_set:Nn &lt;comma list&gt; {&lt;item1&gt;,...,&lt;item_n&gt;}</code>
<code>\clist_set:(NV No Nx cn cV co cx)</code>	
<code>\clist_gset:Nn</code>	
<code>\clist_gset:(NV No Nx cn cV co cx)</code>	

New: 2011-09-06

Sets `<comma list>` to contain the `<items>`, removing any previous content from the variable. Spaces are removed from both sides of each item.

<hr/>	
<code>\clist_put_left:Nn</code>	<code>\clist_put_left:Nn &lt;comma list&gt; {&lt;item1&gt;,...,&lt;item_n&gt;}</code>
<code>\clist_put_left:(NV No Nx cn cV co cx)</code>	
<code>\clist_gput_left:Nn</code>	
<code>\clist_gput_left:(NV No Nx cn cV co cx)</code>	

Updated: 2011-09-05

Appends the `<items>` to the left of the `<comma list>`. Spaces are removed from both sides of each item.

<hr/>	
<code>\clist_put_right:Nn</code>	<code>\clist_put_right:Nn &lt;comma list&gt; {&lt;item1&gt;,...,&lt;item_n&gt;}</code>
<code>\clist_put_right:(NV No Nx cn cV co cx)</code>	
<code>\clist_gput_right:Nn</code>	
<code>\clist_gput_right:(NV No Nx cn cV co cx)</code>	

Updated: 2011-09-05

Appends the `<items>` to the right of the `<comma list>`. Spaces are removed from both sides of each item.

## 107 Using comma lists

<hr/>	
<code>\clist_use:N</code> ★	<code>\clist_use:N &lt;comma list&gt;</code>
<code>\clist_use:c</code> ★	Places the <code>&lt;comma list&gt;</code> directly into the input stream, including the commas, thus treating it as a <code>&lt;token list&gt;</code> .



## 108 Modifying comma lists

While comma lists are normally used as ordered lists, it may be necessary to modify the content. The functions here may be used to update comma lists, while retaining the order of the unaffected entries.

---

<code>\clist_remove_duplicates:N</code>	<code>\clist_remove_duplicates:N &lt;comma list&gt;</code>
<code>\clist_remove_duplicates:c</code>	
<code>\clist_gremove_duplicates:N</code>	
<code>\clist_gremove_duplicates:c</code>	

---

Removes duplicate items from the *<comma list>*, leaving the left most copy of each item in the *<comma list>*. The *<item>* comparison takes place on a token basis, as for `\tl_if_eq:nn(TF)`.

**T<sub>E</sub>Xhackers note:** This function iterates through every item in the *<comma list>* and does a comparison with the *<items>* already checked. It is therefore relatively slow with large comma lists. Furthermore, it will not work if any of the items in the *<comma list>* contains `{`, `}`, or `#` (assuming the usual T<sub>E</sub>X category codes apply).

---

<code>\clist_remove_all:Nn</code>	<code>\clist_remove_all:Nn &lt;comma list&gt; {&lt;item&gt;}</code>
<code>\clist_remove_all:cn</code>	
<code>\clist_gremove_all:Nn</code>	
<code>\clist_gremove_all:cn</code>	

---

Removes every occurrence of *<item>* from the *<comma list>*. The *<item>* comparison takes place on a token basis, as for `\tl_if_eq:nn(TF)`.

Updated: 2011-09-06

**T<sub>E</sub>Xhackers note:** The *<item>* may not contain `{`, `}`, or `#` (assuming the usual T<sub>E</sub>X category codes apply).

## 109 Comma list conditionals

---

<code>\clist_if_empty_p:N</code> ★	<code>\clist_if_empty_p:N &lt;comma list&gt;</code>
<code>\clist_if_empty_p:c</code> ★	<code>\clist_if_empty:N<math>\overline{TF}</math> &lt;comma list&gt; {&lt;true code&gt;} {&lt;false code&gt;}</code>
<code>\clist_if_empty:N<math>\overline{TF}</math></code> ★	
<code>\clist_if_empty:c<math>\overline{TF}</math></code> ★	Tests if the <i>&lt;comma list&gt;</i> is empty (containing no items).

---



---

<code>\clist_if_eq_p:NN</code> ★	<code>\clist_if_eq_p:NN {&lt;clist<sub>1</sub>&gt;} {&lt;clist<sub>2</sub>&gt;}</code>
<code>\clist_if_eq_p:(Nc cN cc)</code> ★	<code>\clist_if_eq:NNTF {&lt;clist<sub>1</sub>&gt;} {&lt;clist<sub>2</sub>&gt;} {&lt;true code&gt;} {&lt;false code&gt;}</code>
<code>\clist_if_eq:NNTF</code> ★	
<code>\clist_if_eq:(Nc cN cc)<math>\overline{TF}</math></code> ★	Compares the content of two <i>&lt;comma lists&gt;</i> and is logically <b>true</b> if the two contain the same list of entries in the same order.

---

---

<code>\clist_if_in:NnTF</code> <code>\clist_if_in:(NV No cn cV co nn nV no)TF</code>	<code>\clist_if_in:NnTF &lt;comma list&gt; {&lt;item&gt;} {&lt;true code&gt;} {&lt;false code&gt;}</code>
---	---

---

Updated: 2011-09-06

Tests if the  $\langle item \rangle$  is present in the  $\langle comma list \rangle$ . In the case of an  $n$ -type  $\langle comma list \rangle$ , spaces are stripped from each item, but braces are not removed. Hence,

`\clist_if_in:nnTF { a , {b}~ , {b} , c } { b } {true} {false}`

yields **false**.

**T<sub>E</sub>Xhackers note:** The  $\langle item \rangle$  may not contain  $\{$ ,  $\}$ , or  $\#$  (assuming the usual T<sub>E</sub>X category codes apply), and should not contain  $,$  nor start or end with a space.

## 110 Mapping to comma lists

The functions described in this section apply a specified function to each item of a comma list.

When the comma list is given explicitly, as an  $n$ -type argument, spaces are trimmed around each item. If the result of trimming spaces is empty, the item is ignored. Otherwise, if the item is surrounded by braces, one set is removed, and the result is passed to the mapped function. Thus, if your comma list that is being mapped is  $\{a_{\square},_{\square}\{b_{\square}\},_{\square}\{c\},\}$  then the arguments passed to the mapped function are ‘a’, ‘{b<sub>□</sub>}’, an empty argument, and ‘c’.

When the comma list is given as an  $N$ -type argument, spaces have already been trimmed on input, and items are simply stripped of one set of braces if any. This case is more efficient than using  $n$ -type comma lists.

---

<code>\clist_map_function:NN</code> <code>\clist_map_function:(cN nN)</code>	<code>\clist_map_function:NN &lt;comma list&gt; &lt;function&gt;</code> <span style="color: red;">☆</span>
---	---

---

Applies  $\langle function \rangle$  to every  $\langle item \rangle$  stored in the  $\langle comma list \rangle$ . The  $\langle function \rangle$  will receive one argument for each iteration. The  $\langle items \rangle$  are returned from left to right. The function `\clist_map_inline:Nn` is in general more efficient than `\clist_map_function:NN`. One mapping may be nested inside another.

---

<code>\clist_map_inline:Nn</code> <code>\clist_map_inline:(cn nn)</code>	<code>\clist_map_inline:Nn &lt;comma list&gt; {&lt;inline function&gt;}</code>
---	--

---

Applies  $\langle inline function \rangle$  to every  $\langle item \rangle$  stored within the  $\langle comma list \rangle$ . The  $\langle inline function \rangle$  should consist of code which will receive the  $\langle item \rangle$  as  $\#1$ . One in line mapping can be nested inside another. The  $\langle items \rangle$  are returned from left to right.

---

<code>\clist_map_variable:NnN</code>	<code>\clist_map_variable:NnN &lt;comma list&gt; &lt;tl var.&gt; {&lt;function using tl var.&gt;}</code>
<code>\clist_map_variable:(cNn nNn)</code>	

---

Stores each entry in the *<comma list>* in turn in the *<tl var.>* and applies the *<function using tl var.>* The *<function>* will usually consist of code making use of the *<tl var.>*, but this is not enforced. One variable mapping can be nested inside another. The *<items>* are returned from left to right.

---

<code>\clist_map_break</code> ☆	<code>\clist_map_break:</code>
---------------------------------	--------------------------------

---

Used to terminate a `\clist_map...` function before all entries in the *<comma list>* have been processed. This will normally take place within a conditional statement, for example

```
\clist_map_inline:Nn \l_my_clist
{
  \str_if_eq:nnTF { #1 } { bingo }
  { \clist_map_break: }
  {
    % Do something useful
  }
}
```

Use outside of a `\clist_map...` scenario will lead to low level TeX errors.

**TeXhackers note:** When the mapping is broken, additional tokens may be inserted by the internal macro `\prg_break_point:n` before further items are taken from the input stream. This will depend on the design of the mapping function.

---

<code>\clist_map_break:n</code>	☆	<code>\clist_map_break:n {⟨tokens⟩}</code>
---------------------------------	---	--

---

Used to terminate a `\clist_map_...` function before all entries in the *⟨comma list⟩* have been processed, inserting the *⟨tokens⟩* after the mapping has ended. This will normally take place within a conditional statement, for example

```
\clist_map_inline:Nn \l_my_clist
{
  \str_if_eq:nnTF { #1 } { bingo }
  { \clist_map_break:n { <tokens> } }
  {
    % Do something useful
  }
}
```

Use outside of a `\clist_map_...` scenario will lead to low level TeX errors.

**TeXhackers note:** When the mapping is broken, additional tokens may be inserted by the internal macro `\prg_break_point:n` before the *⟨tokens⟩* are inserted into the input stream. This will depend on the design of the mapping function.

## 111 Comma lists as stacks

Comma lists can be used as stacks, where data is pushed to and popped from the top of the comma list. (The left of a comma list is the top, for performance reasons.) The stack functions for comma lists are not intended to be mixed with the general ordered data functions detailed in the previous section: a comma list should either be used as an ordered data type or as a stack, but not in both ways.

---

<code>\clist_get:NN</code>	<code>\clist_get:NN ⟨comma list⟩ ⟨token list variable⟩</code>
----------------------------	---

---

<code>\clist_get:cN</code>	Stores the left-most item from a <i>⟨comma list⟩</i> in the <i>⟨token list variable⟩</i> without removing it from the <i>⟨comma list⟩</i> . The <i>⟨token list variable⟩</i> is assigned locally.
----------------------------	---

---

<code>\clist_get:NN</code>	<code>\clist_get:NN ⟨comma list⟩ ⟨token list variable⟩</code>
----------------------------	---

---

<code>\clist_get:cN</code>	Stores the right-most item from a <i>⟨comma list⟩</i> in the <i>⟨token list variable⟩</i> without removing it from the <i>⟨comma list⟩</i> . The <i>⟨token list variable⟩</i> is assigned locally.
----------------------------	--

---

<code>\clist_pop:NN</code>	<code>\clist_pop:NN ⟨comma list⟩ ⟨token list variable⟩</code>
----------------------------	---

---

<code>\clist_pop:cN</code>	Pops the left-most item from a <i>⟨comma list⟩</i> into the <i>⟨token list variable⟩</i> , <i>i.e.</i> removes the item from the comma list and stores it in the <i>⟨token list variable⟩</i> . Both of the variables are assigned locally.
----------------------------	---

---

Updated: 2011-09-06

<hr/> <code>\clist_gpop:Nn</code> <hr/>	<code>\clist_gpop:NN</code> $\langle comma list \rangle$ $\langle token list variable \rangle$
<code>\clist_gpop:cN</code> <hr/>	Pops the left-most item from a $\langle comma list \rangle$ into the $\langle token list variable \rangle$ , <i>i.e.</i> removes the item from the comma list and stores it in the $\langle token list variable \rangle$ . The $\langle comma list \rangle$ is modified globally, while the assignment of the $\langle token list variable \rangle$ is local.

<hr/> <code>\clist_push:Nn</code> <hr/>	<code>\clist_push:Nn</code> $\langle comma list \rangle$ $\{\langle items \rangle\}$
<code>\clist_push:(NV No Nx cn cV co cx)</code>	
<code>\clist_gpush:Nn</code>	
<code>\clist_gpush:(NV No Nx cn cV co cx)</code> <hr/>	

Adds the  $\{\langle items \rangle\}$  to the top of the  $\langle comma list \rangle$ . Spaces are removed from both sides of each item.

## 112 Viewing comma lists

<hr/> <code>\clist_show:N</code> <hr/>	<code>\clist_show:N</code> $\langle comma list \rangle$
<code>\clist_show:c</code> <hr/>	Displays the entries in the $\langle comma list \rangle$ in the terminal.

<hr/> <code>\clist_show:n</code> <hr/>	<code>\clist_show:n</code> $\{\langle tokens \rangle\}$
	Displays the entries in the comma list in the terminal.

## 113 Scratch comma lists

<hr/> <code>\l_tmpa_clist</code> <hr/>	Scratch comma lists for local assignment. These are never used by the kernel code, and so are safe for use with any L <sup>A</sup> T <sub>E</sub> X3-defined function. However, they may be overwritten by other non-kernel code and so should only be used for short-term storage.
<code>\l_tmpb_clist</code> <hr/>	
<code>New: 2011-09-06</code> <hr/>	

<hr/> <code>\g_tmpa_clist</code> <hr/>	Scratch comma lists for global assignment. These are never used by the kernel code, and so are safe for use with any L <sup>A</sup> T <sub>E</sub> X3-defined function. However, they may be overwritten by other non-kernel code and so should only be used for short-term storage.
<code>\g_tmpb_clist</code> <hr/>	
<code>New: 2011-09-06</code> <hr/>	

## 114 Experimental comma list functions

This section contains functions which may or may not be retained, depending on how useful they are found to be.

<hr/> <code>\clist_length:N</code> ★ <hr/>	<code>\clist_length:N</code> $\langle comma list \rangle$
<code>\clist_length:(c n)</code> ★	Leaves the number of items in the $\langle comma list \rangle$ in the input stream as an $\langle integer denotation \rangle$ . The total number of items in a $\langle comma list \rangle$ will include those which are duplicates, <i>i.e.</i> every item in a $\langle comma list \rangle$ is unique.
<code>New: 2011-06-25</code>	
<code>Updated: 2011-09-06</code> <hr/>	

---

<code>\clist_item:Nn</code>	★
<code>\clist_item:(cn nn)</code>	★
Updated: 2012-01-08	

---

`\clist_item:Nn`  $\langle comma list \rangle$   $\{ \langle integer expression \rangle \}$

Indexing items in the  $\langle comma list \rangle$  from 0 at the top (left), this function will evaluate the  $\langle integer expression \rangle$  and leave the appropriate item from the comma list in the input stream. If the  $\langle integer expression \rangle$  is negative, indexing occurs from the bottom (right) of the comma list. When the  $\langle integer expression \rangle$  is larger than the number of items in the  $\langle comma list \rangle$  (as calculated by `\clist_length:N`) then the function will expand to nothing.

**T<sub>E</sub>Xhackers note:** The result is returned within the `\unexpanded` primitive (`\exp_not:n`), which means that the  $\langle item \rangle$  will not expand further when appearing in an x-type argument expansion.

---

<code>\clist_set_from_seq:NN</code>	<code>\clist_set_from_seq:NN</code> $\langle comma list \rangle$ $\langle sequence \rangle$
<code>\clist_set_from_seq:(cn Nc cc)</code>	
<code>\clist_gset_from_seq:NN</code>	
<code>\clist_gset_from_seq:(cn Nc cc)</code>	
Updated: 2011-08-31	

---

Sets the  $\langle comma list \rangle$  to be equal to the content of the  $\langle sequence \rangle$ . Items which contain either spaces or commas are surrounded by braces.

---

<code>\clist_const:Nn</code>	
<code>\clist_const:(Nx cn cx)</code>	
New: 2011-11-26	

---

`\clist_const:Nn`  $\langle clist var \rangle$   $\{ \langle comma list \rangle \}$

Creates a new constant  $\langle clist var \rangle$  or raises an error if the name is already taken. The value of the  $\langle clist var \rangle$  will be set globally to the  $\langle comma list \rangle$ .

---

<code>\clist_if_empty_p:n</code>	★
<code>\clist_if_empty:nTF</code>	★
New: 2011-12-07	

---

`\clist_if_empty_p:n`  $\{ \langle comma list \rangle \}$

`\clist_if_empty:nTF`  $\{ \langle comma list \rangle \}$   $\{ \langle true code \rangle \}$   $\{ \langle false code \rangle \}$

Tests if the  $\langle comma list \rangle$  is empty (containing no items). The rules for space trimming are as for other n-type comma-list functions, hence the comma list  $\{ \sim, \sim, \sim \}$  (without outer braces) is empty, while  $\{ \sim, \{ \}, \}$  (without outer braces) contains one element, which happens to be empty: the comma-list is not empty.

## 115 Internal comma-list functions

---

<code>\clist_trim_spaces:n</code>	★
New: 2011-07-09	

---

`\clist_trim_spaces:n`  $\{ \langle comma list \rangle \}$

Removes leading and trailing spaces from each  $\langle item \rangle$  in the  $\langle comma list \rangle$ , leaving the resulting modified list in the input stream. This is used by the functions which add data into a comma list.

## Part XIV

# The l3prop package

## Property lists

L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X3 implements a “property list” data type, which contain an unordered list of entries each of which consists of a  $\langle key \rangle$  and an associated  $\langle value \rangle$ . The  $\langle key \rangle$  and  $\langle value \rangle$  may both be any  $\langle balanced\ text \rangle$ . It is possible to map functions to property lists such that the function is applied to every key–value pair within the list.

Each entry in a property list must have a unique  $\langle key \rangle$ : if an entry is added to a property list which already contains the  $\langle key \rangle$  then the new entry will overwrite the existing one. The  $\langle keys \rangle$  are compared on a string basis, using the same method as `\str_if_eq:nn`.

Property lists are intended for storing key-based information for use within code. This is in contrast to key–value lists, which are a form of *input* parsed by the `keys` module.

### 116 Creating and initialising property lists

---

`\prop_new:N`  
`\prop_new:c`

---

`\prop_new:N`  $\langle property\ list \rangle$

Creates a new  $\langle property\ list \rangle$  or raises an error if the name is already taken. The declaration is global. The  $\langle property\ lists \rangle$  will initially contain no entries.

---

`\prop_clear:N`  
`\prop_clear:c`  
`\prop_gclear:N`  
`\prop_gclear:c`

---

`\prop_clear:N`  $\langle property\ list \rangle$

Clears all entries from the  $\langle property\ list \rangle$ .

---

`\prop_clear_new:N`  
`\prop_clear_new:c`  
`\prop_gclear_new:N`  
`\prop_gclear_new:c`

---

`\prop_clear_new:N`  $\langle property\ list \rangle$

Ensures that the  $\langle property\ list \rangle$  exists globally by applying `\prop_new:N` if necessary, then applies `\prop_(g)clear:N` to leave the list empty.

---

`\prop_set_eq:NN`  
`\prop_set_eq:(cN|Nc|cc)`  
`\prop_gset_eq:NN`  
`\prop_gset_eq:(cN|Nc|cc)`

---

`\prop_set_eq:NN`  $\langle property\ list1 \rangle$   $\langle property\ list2 \rangle$

Sets the content of  $\langle property\ list1 \rangle$  equal to that of  $\langle property\ list2 \rangle$ .

## 117 Adding entries to property lists

---

<code>\prop_put:Nnn</code>	<code>\prop_put:Nnn &lt;property list&gt;</code>
<code>\prop_put:(NnV Nno Nnx NVn NVV Non Noo cnn cnV cno cnx cVn cVV con coo)</code>	<code>{&lt;key&gt;} {&lt;value&gt;}</code>
<code>\prop_gput:Nnn</code>	
<code>\prop_gput:(NnV Nno Nnx NVn NVV Non Noo cnn cnV cno cnx cVn cVV con coo)</code>	

---

Adds an entry to the *<property list>* which may be accessed using the *<key>* and which has *<value>*. Both the *<key>* and *<value>* may contain any *<balanced text>*. The *<key>* is stored after processing with `\tl_to_str:n`, meaning that category codes are ignored. If the *<key>* is already present in the *<property list>*, the existing entry is overwritten by the new *<value>*.

---

<code>\prop_put_if_new:Nnn</code>	<code>\prop_put_if_new:Nnn &lt;property list&gt; {&lt;key&gt;} {&lt;value&gt;}</code>
<code>\prop_put_if_new:cnn</code>	
<code>\prop_gput_if_new:Nnn</code>	If the <i>&lt;key&gt;</i> is present in the <i>&lt;property list&gt;</i> then no action is taken. If the <i>&lt;key&gt;</i> is not present in the <i>&lt;property list&gt;</i> then a new entry is added. Both the <i>&lt;key&gt;</i> and <i>&lt;value&gt;</i> may contain any <i>&lt;balanced text&gt;</i> . The <i>&lt;key&gt;</i> is stored after processing with <code>\tl_to_str:n</code> , meaning that category codes are ignored.
<code>\prop_gput_if_new:cnn</code>	

---

## 118 Recovering values from property lists

---

<code>\prop_get:NnN</code>	<code>\prop_get:NnN &lt;property list&gt; {&lt;key&gt;} &lt;tl var&gt;</code>
<code>\prop_get:(NVN NoN cnN cVN coN)</code>	

---

Updated: 2011-08-28

Recovers the *<value>* stored with *<key>* from the *<property list>*, and places this in the *<token list variable>*. If the *<key>* is not found in the *<property list>* then the *<token list variable>* will contain the special marker `\q_no_value`. The *<token list variable>* is set within the current  $\TeX$  group. See also `\prop_get:NnNTF`.

---

<code>\prop_pop:NnN</code>	<code>\prop_pop:NnN &lt;property list&gt; {&lt;key&gt;} &lt;tl var&gt;</code>
<code>\prop_pop:(NoN cnN coN)</code>	
Updated: 2011-08-18	Recovers the <i>&lt;value&gt;</i> stored with <i>&lt;key&gt;</i> from the <i>&lt;property list&gt;</i> , and places this in the <i>&lt;token list variable&gt;</i> . If the <i>&lt;key&gt;</i> is not found in the <i>&lt;property list&gt;</i> then the <i>&lt;token list variable&gt;</i> will contain the special marker <code>\q_no_value</code> . The <i>&lt;key&gt;</i> and <i>&lt;value&gt;</i> are then deleted from the property list. Both assignments are local.

---



---

<code>\prop_gpop:NnN</code>	<code>\prop_gpop:NnN &lt;property list&gt; {&lt;key&gt;} &lt;tl var&gt;</code>
<code>\prop_gpop:(NoN cnN coN)</code>	
Updated: 2011-08-18	Recovers the <i>&lt;value&gt;</i> stored with <i>&lt;key&gt;</i> from the <i>&lt;property list&gt;</i> , and places this in the <i>&lt;token list variable&gt;</i> . If the <i>&lt;key&gt;</i> is not found in the <i>&lt;property list&gt;</i> then the <i>&lt;token list variable&gt;</i> will contain the special marker <code>\q_no_value</code> . The <i>&lt;key&gt;</i> and <i>&lt;value&gt;</i> are then deleted from the property list. The <i>&lt;property list&gt;</i> is modified globally, while the assignment of the <i>&lt;token list variable&gt;</i> is local.

---



## 119 Modifying property lists

---

<code>\prop_del:Nn</code>	<code>\prop_del:Nn &lt;property list&gt; {&lt;key&gt;}</code>
<code>\prop_del:(NV cn cV)</code>	
<code>\prop_gdel:Nn</code>	Deletes the entry listed under <i>&lt;key&gt;</i> from the <i>&lt;property list&gt;</i> which may be accessed. If
<code>\prop_gdel:(NV cn cV)</code>	the <i>&lt;key&gt;</i> is not found in the <i>&lt;property list&gt;</i> no change occurs, <i>i.e</i> there is no need to test
	for the existence of a key before deleting it. The deletion is restricted to the current $\mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{E}}\mathrm{X}$
	group.

---

## 120 Property list conditionals

---

<code>\prop_if_empty_p:N</code> *	<code>\prop_if_empty_p:N &lt;property list&gt;</code>
<code>\prop_if_empty_p:c</code> *	<code>\prop_if_empty:NNTF &lt;property list&gt; {&lt;true code&gt;} {&lt;false code&gt;}</code>
<code>\prop_if_empty:NNTF</code> *	Tests if the <i>&lt;property list&gt;</i> is empty (containing no entries).
<code>\prop_if_empty:cTF</code> *	
<hr/>	
<code>\prop_if_in_p:Nn</code> *	<code>\prop_if_in:NnNTF &lt;property list&gt; {&lt;key&gt;} {&lt;true code&gt;} {&lt;false code&gt;}</code>
<code>\prop_if_in_p:(NV No cn cV co)</code> *	
<code>\prop_if_in:NnTF</code> *	
<code>\prop_if_in:(NV No cn cV co)TF</code> *	

---

Updated: 2011-09-15

Tests if the *<key>* is present in the *<property list>*, making the comparison using the method described by `\str_if_eq:nnTF`.

**$\mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{E}}\mathrm{X}$ hackers note:** This function iterates through every key–value pair in the *<property list>* and is therefore slower than using the non-expandable `\prop_get:NnNTF`.

## 121 Recovering values from property lists with branching

The functions in this section combine tests for the presence of a key in a property list with recovery of the associated valued. This makes them useful for cases where different cases follow dependent on the presence or absence of a key in a property list. They offer increased readability and performance over separate testing and recovery phases.

---

<code>\prop_get:NnNTF</code>	<code>\prop_get:NnNTF &lt;property list&gt; {&lt;key&gt;} &lt;token list variable&gt;</code>
<code>\prop_get:(NVN NoN cnN cVN coN)TF</code>	<code>{&lt;true code&gt;} {&lt;false code&gt;}</code>

---

Updated: 2011-08-28

If the *<key>* is not present in the *<property list>*, leaves the *<false code>* in the input stream and leaves the *<token list variable>* unchanged. If the *<key>* is present in the *<property list>*, stores the corresponding *<value>* in the *<token list variable>* without removing it from the *<property list>*. The *<token list variable>* is assigned locally.

---

`\prop_pop:NnNTF`  
`\prop_pop:cnNTF`

---

New: 2011-08-18

`\prop_pop:NnNTF`  $\langle property\ list \rangle$   $\{\langle key \rangle\}$   $\langle token\ list\ variable \rangle$   
 $\{\langle true\ code \rangle\}$   $\{\langle false\ code \rangle\}$

If the  $\langle key \rangle$  is not present in the  $\langle property\ list \rangle$ , leaves the  $\langle false\ code \rangle$  in the input stream and leaves the  $\langle token\ list\ variable \rangle$  unchanged. If the  $\langle key \rangle$  is present in the  $\langle property\ list \rangle$ , pops the corresponding  $\langle value \rangle$  in the  $\langle token\ list\ variable \rangle$ , *i.e.* removes the item from the  $\langle property\ list \rangle$ . Both the  $\langle property\ list \rangle$  and the  $\langle token\ list\ variable \rangle$  are assigned locally.

## 122 Mapping to property lists

---

`\prop_map_function:Nn` ☆  
`\prop_map_function:cn` ☆

---

`\prop_map_function:Nn`  $\langle property\ list \rangle$   $\langle function \rangle$

Applies  $\langle function \rangle$  to every  $\langle entry \rangle$  stored in the  $\langle property\ list \rangle$ . The  $\langle function \rangle$  will receive two argument for each iteration: the  $\langle key \rangle$  and associated  $\langle value \rangle$ . The order in which  $\langle entries \rangle$  are returned is not defined and should not be relied upon.

---

`\prop_map_inline:Nn`  
`\prop_map_inline:cn`

---

`\prop_map_inline:Nn`  $\langle property\ list \rangle$   $\{\langle inline\ function \rangle\}$

Applies  $\langle inline\ function \rangle$  to every  $\langle entry \rangle$  stored within the  $\langle property\ list \rangle$ . The  $\langle inline\ function \rangle$  should consist of code which will receive the  $\langle key \rangle$  as #1 and the  $\langle value \rangle$  as #2. The order in which  $\langle entries \rangle$  are returned is not defined and should not be relied upon.

---

`\prop_map_break` ☆

---

`\prop_map_break:`

Used to terminate a `\prop_map...` function before all entries in the  $\langle property\ list \rangle$  have been processed. This will normally take place within a conditional statement, for example

```
\prop_map_inline:Nn \l_my_prop
{
  \str_if_eq:nnTF { #1 } { bingo }
  { \prop_map_break: }
  {
    % Do something useful
  }
}
```

Use outside of a `\prop_map...` scenario will lead low level TeX errors.

---

`\prop_map_break:n` ☆

---

`\prop_map_break:n`  $\{(tokens)\}$

Used to terminate a `\prop_map...` function before all entries in the  $\langle property list \rangle$  have been processed, inserting the  $\langle tokens \rangle$  after the mapping has ended. This will normally take place within a conditional statement, for example

```
\prop_map_inline:Nn \l_my_prop
{
  \str_if_eq:nnTF { #1 } { bingo }
  { \prop_map_break:n { <tokens> } }
  {
    % Do something useful
  }
}
```

Use outside of a `\prop_map...` scenario will lead low level  $\text{\TeX}$  errors.

## 123 Viewing property lists

---

`\prop_show:N`

---

`\prop_show:N`  $\langle property list \rangle$

`\prop_show:c`

---

Displays the entries in the  $\langle property list \rangle$  in the terminal.

## 124 Experimental property list functions

This section contains functions which may or may not be retained, depending on how useful they are found to be.

---

`\prop_gpop:NnNTF`

---

`\prop_gpop:cnNTF`

---

New: 2011-08-18

---

`\prop_gpop:NnNTF`  $\langle property list \rangle$   $\{\langle key \rangle\}$   $\langle token list variable \rangle$   
 $\{\langle true code \rangle\}$   $\{\langle false code \rangle\}$

If the  $\langle key \rangle$  is not present in the  $\langle property list \rangle$ , leaves the  $\langle false code \rangle$  in the input stream and leaves the  $\langle token list variable \rangle$  unchanged. If the  $\langle key \rangle$  is present in the  $\langle property list \rangle$ , pops the corresponding  $\langle value \rangle$  in the  $\langle token list variable \rangle$ , *i.e.* removes the item from the  $\langle property list \rangle$ . The  $\langle property list \rangle$  is modified globally, while the  $\langle token list variable \rangle$  is assigned locally.

---

`\prop_map_tokens:Nn` ☆

---

`\prop_map_tokens:cn` ☆

---

New: 2011-08-18

---

`\prop_map_tokens:Nn`  $\langle property list \rangle$   $\{\langle code \rangle\}$

Analogue of `\prop_map_function:NN` which maps several tokens instead of a single function. Useful in particular when mapping through a property list while keeping track of a given key.

<hr/> <code>\prop_get:Nn</code> ★	<code>\prop_get:Nn</code> $\langle property list \rangle$ $\{\langle key \rangle\}$
<code>\prop_get:cn</code> ★	Expands to the $\langle value \rangle$ corresponding to the $\langle key \rangle$ in the $\langle property list \rangle$ . If the $\langle key \rangle$ is missing, this has an empty expansion.
<hr/> Updated: 2012-01-08 <hr/>	

**T<sub>E</sub>Xhackers note:** This function is slower than the non-expandable analogue `\prop_get:NnN`. The result is returned within the `\unexpanded` primitive (`\exp_not:n`), which means that the  $\langle value \rangle$  will not expand further when appearing in an x-type argument expansion.

## 125 Internal property list functions

<hr/> <code>\q_prop</code> <hr/>	The internal token used to separate out property list entries, separating both the $\langle key \rangle$ from the $\langle value \rangle$ and also one entry from another.
<hr/> <code>\c_empty_prop</code> <hr/>	A permanently-empty property list used for internal comparisons.
<hr/> <code>\prop_split:Nnn</code> <hr/>	<code>\prop_split:Nnn</code> $\langle property list \rangle$ $\{\langle key \rangle\}$ $\{\langle code \rangle\}$ Splits the $\langle property list \rangle$ at the $\langle key \rangle$ , giving three groups: the $\langle extract \rangle$ of $\langle property list \rangle$ before the $\langle key \rangle$ , the $\langle value \rangle$ associated with the $\langle key \rangle$ and the $\langle extract \rangle$ of the $\langle property list \rangle$ after the $\langle value \rangle$ . The first $\langle extract \rangle$ retains the internal structure of a property list. The second is only missing the leading separator <code>\q_prop</code> . This ensures that the concatenation of the two $\langle extracts \rangle$ is a property list. If the $\langle key \rangle$ is not present in the $\langle property list \rangle$ then the second group will contain the marker <code>\q_no_value</code> and the third is empty. Once the split has occurred, the $\langle code \rangle$ is inserted followed by the three groups: thus the $\langle code \rangle$ should properly absorb three arguments. The $\langle key \rangle$ comparison takes place as described for <code>\str_if_eq:nn</code> .
<hr/> <code>\prop_split:NnTF</code> <hr/>	<code>\prop_split:NnTF</code> $\langle property list \rangle$ $\{\langle key \rangle\}$ $\{\langle true code \rangle\}$ $\{\langle false code \rangle\}$ Splits the $\langle property list \rangle$ at the $\langle key \rangle$ , giving three groups: the $\langle extract \rangle$ of $\langle property list \rangle$ before the $\langle key \rangle$ , the $\langle value \rangle$ associated with the $\langle key \rangle$ and the $\langle extract \rangle$ of the $\langle property list \rangle$ after the $\langle value \rangle$ . The first $\langle extract \rangle$ retains the internal structure of a property list. The second is only missing the leading separator <code>\q_prop</code> . This ensures that the concatenation of the two $\langle extracts \rangle$ is a property list. If the $\langle key \rangle$ is present in the $\langle property list \rangle$ then the $\langle true code \rangle$ is left in the input stream, followed by the three groups: thus the $\langle true code \rangle$ should properly absorb three arguments. If the $\langle key \rangle$ is not present in the $\langle property list \rangle$ then the $\langle false code \rangle$ is left in the input stream, with no trailing material. The $\langle key \rangle$ comparison takes place as described for <code>\str_if_eq:nn</code> .

## Part XV

# The l3box package

## Boxes

There are three kinds of box operations: horizontal mode denoted with prefix `\hbox_`, vertical mode with prefix `\vbox_`, and the generic operations working in both modes with prefix `\box_`.

### 126 Creating and initialising boxes

---

<code>\box_new:N</code>	<code>\box_new:N &lt;box&gt;</code>
<code>\box_new:c</code>	Creates a new <code>&lt;box&gt;</code> or raises an error if the name is already taken. The declaration is global. The <code>&lt;box&gt;</code> will initially be void.

---



---

<code>\box_clear:N</code>	<code>\box_clear:N &lt;box&gt;</code>
<code>\box_clear:c</code>	Clears the content of the <code>&lt;box&gt;</code> by setting the box equal to <code>\c_void_box</code> .
<code>\box_gclear:N</code>	
<code>\box_gclear:c</code>	

---



---

<code>\box_clear_new:N</code>	<code>\box_clear_new:N &lt;box&gt;</code>
<code>\box_clear_new:c</code>	Ensures that the <code>&lt;box&gt;</code> exists globally by applying <code>\box_new:N</code> if necessary, then applies <code>\box_(g)clear:N</code> to leave the <code>&lt;box&gt;</code> empty.
<code>\box_gclear_new:N</code>	
<code>\box_gclear_new:c</code>	

---



---

<code>\box_set_eq:NN</code>	<code>\box_set_eq:NN &lt;box1&gt; &lt;box2&gt;</code>
<code>\box_set_eq:(cN Nc cc)</code>	Sets the content of <code>&lt;box1&gt;</code> equal to that of <code>&lt;box2&gt;</code> .
<code>\box_gset_eq:NN</code>	
<code>\box_gset_eq:(cN Nc cc)</code>	

---



---

<code>\box_set_eq_clear:NN</code>	<code>\box_set_eq_clear:NN &lt;box1&gt; &lt;box2&gt;</code>
<code>\box_set_eq_clear:(cN Nc cc)</code>	Sets the content of <code>&lt;box1&gt;</code> within the current TeX group equal to that of <code>&lt;box2&gt;</code> , then clears <code>&lt;box2&gt;</code> globally.

---



---

<code>\box_gset_eq_clear:NN</code>	<code>\box_gset_eq_clear:NN &lt;box1&gt; &lt;box2&gt;</code>
<code>\box_gset_eq_clear:(cN Nc cc)</code>	Sets the content of <code>&lt;box1&gt;</code> equal to that of <code>&lt;box2&gt;</code> , then clears <code>&lt;box2&gt;</code> . These assignments are global.

---

## 127 Using boxes

---

<code>\box_use:N</code>	<code>\box_use:N</code> $\langle box \rangle$
<code>\box_use:c</code>	

---

Inserts the current content of the  $\langle box \rangle$  onto the current list for typesetting.

**T<sub>E</sub>Xhackers note:** This is the T<sub>E</sub>X primitive `\copy`.

---

<code>\box_use_clear:N</code>	<code>\box_use_clear:N</code> $\langle box \rangle$
<code>\box_use_clear:c</code>	

---

Inserts the current content of the  $\langle box \rangle$  onto the current list for typesetting, then globally clears the content of the  $\langle box \rangle$ .

**T<sub>E</sub>Xhackers note:** This is the T<sub>E</sub>X primitive `\box`.

---

<code>\box_move_right:nn</code>	<code>\box_move_right:nn</code> $\{\langle dimexpr \rangle\}$ $\{\langle box function \rangle\}$
<code>\box_move_left:nn</code>	

---

This function operates in vertical mode, and inserts the material specified by the  $\langle box function \rangle$  such that its reference point is displaced horizontally by the given  $\langle dimexpr \rangle$  from the reference point for typesetting, to the right or left as appropriate. The  $\langle box function \rangle$  should be a box operation such as `\box_use:N \<box>` or a “raw” box specification such as `\vbox:n { xyz }`.

---

<code>\box_move_up:nn</code>	<code>\box_move_up:nn</code> $\{\langle dimexpr \rangle\}$ $\{\langle box function \rangle\}$
<code>\box_move_down:nn</code>	

---

This function operates in horizontal mode, and inserts the material specified by the  $\langle box function \rangle$  such that its reference point is displaced vertical by the given  $\langle dimexpr \rangle$  from the reference point for typesetting, up or down as appropriate. The  $\langle box function \rangle$  should be a box operation such as `\box_use:N \<box>` or a “raw” box specification such as `\vbox:n { xyz }`.

## 128 Measuring and setting box dimensions

---

<code>\box_dp:N</code>	<code>\box_dp:N</code> $\langle box \rangle$
<code>\box_dp:c</code>	

---

Calculates the depth (below the baseline) of the  $\langle box \rangle$  in a form suitable for use in a  $\langle dimension expression \rangle$ .

**T<sub>E</sub>Xhackers note:** This is the T<sub>E</sub>X primitive `\dp`.

---

<code>\box_ht:N</code>	<code>\box_ht:N</code> $\langle box \rangle$
<code>\box_ht:c</code>	

---

Calculates the height (above the baseline) of the  $\langle box \rangle$  in a form suitable for use in a  $\langle dimension expression \rangle$ .

**T<sub>E</sub>Xhackers note:** This is the T<sub>E</sub>X primitive `\ht`.

<hr/> <code>\box_wd:N</code> <hr/>	<code>\box_wd:N &lt;box&gt;</code>
<code>\box_wd:c</code> <hr/>	Calculates the width of the <code>&lt;box&gt;</code> in a form suitable for use in a <code>&lt;dimension expression&gt;</code> .
<b>TeXhackers note:</b> This is the TeX primitive <code>\wd</code> .	
<hr/> <code>\box_set_dp:Nn</code> <hr/>	<code>\box_set_dp:Nn &lt;box&gt; {&lt;dimension expression&gt;}</code>
<code>\box_set_dp:cn</code> <hr/>	Set the depth (below the baseline) of the <code>&lt;box&gt;</code> to the value of the <code>{&lt;dimension expression&gt;}</code> . This is a global assignment.
Updated: 2011-10-22	
<hr/> <code>\box_set_ht:Nn</code> <hr/>	<code>\box_set_ht:Nn &lt;box&gt; {&lt;dimension expression&gt;}</code>
<code>\box_set_ht:cn</code> <hr/>	Set the height (above the baseline) of the <code>&lt;box&gt;</code> to the value of the <code>{&lt;dimension expression&gt;}</code> . This is a global assignment.
Updated: 2011-10-22	
<hr/> <code>\box_set_wd:Nn</code> <hr/>	<code>\box_set_wd:Nn &lt;box&gt; {&lt;dimension expression&gt;}</code>
<code>\box_set_wd:cn</code> <hr/>	Set the width of the <code>&lt;box&gt;</code> to the value of the <code>{&lt;dimension expression&gt;}</code> . This is a global assignment.
Updated: 2011-10-22	

## 129 Affine transformations

Affine transformations are changes which (informally) preserve straight lines. Simple translations are affine transformations, but are better handled in TeX by doing the translation first, then inserting an unmodified box. On the other hand, rotation and resizing of boxed material can best be handled by modifying boxes. These transformations are described here.

<hr/> <code>\box_resize:Nnn</code> <hr/>	<code>\box_resize:Nnn &lt;box&gt; {&lt;x-size&gt;} {&lt;y-size&gt;}</code>
<code>\box_resize:cnn</code> <hr/>	Resize the <code>&lt;box&gt;</code> to <code>&lt;x-size&gt;</code> horizontally and <code>&lt;y-size&gt;</code> vertically (both of the sizes are dimension expressions). The <code>&lt;y-size&gt;</code> is the vertical size (height plus depth) of the box. The updated <code>&lt;box&gt;</code> will be an hbox, irrespective of the nature of the <code>&lt;box&gt;</code> before the resizing is applied. Negative sizes will cause the material in the <code>&lt;box&gt;</code> to be reversed in direction, but the reference point of the <code>&lt;box&gt;</code> will be unchanged. The resizing applies within the current TeX group level.
New: 2011-09-02	
<b>This function is experimental</b>	

---

```
\box_resize_to_ht_plus_dp:Nn \box_resize_to_ht_plus_dp:Nn <box> {<y-size>}
\box_resize_to_ht_plus_dp:cn
```

---

New: 2011-09-02

Updated: 2011-10-22

---

Resize the  $\langle box \rangle$  to  $\langle y-size \rangle$  vertically, scaling the horizontal size by the same amount ( $\langle y-size \rangle$  is a dimension expression). The  $\langle y-size \rangle$  is the vertical size (height plus depth) of the box. The updated  $\langle box \rangle$  will be an hbox, irrespective of the nature of the  $\langle box \rangle$  before the resizing is applied. A negative size will cause the material in the  $\langle box \rangle$  to be reversed in direction, but the reference point of the  $\langle box \rangle$  will be unchanged. The resizing applies within the current  $\text{\TeX}$  group level.

**This function is experimental**

---

```
\box_resize_to_wd:Nnn \box_resize_to_wd:Nnn <box> {<x-size>}
\box_resize_to_wd:cn
```

---

New: 2011-09-02

Updated: 2011-10-22

---

Resize the  $\langle box \rangle$  to  $\langle x-size \rangle$  horizontally, scaling the vertical size by the same amount ( $\langle x-size \rangle$  is a dimension expression). The updated  $\langle box \rangle$  will be an hbox, irrespective of the nature of the  $\langle box \rangle$  before the resizing is applied. A negative size will cause the material in the  $\langle box \rangle$  to be reversed in direction, but the reference point of the  $\langle box \rangle$  will be unchanged. The resizing applies within the current  $\text{\TeX}$  group level.

**This function is experimental**

---

```
\box_rotate:Nn \box_rotate:Nn <box> {<angle>}
\box_rotate:cn
```

---

New: 2011-09-02

Updated: 2011-10-22

---

Rotates the  $\langle box \rangle$  by  $\langle angle \rangle$  (in degrees) anti-clockwise about its reference point. The reference point of the updated box will be moved horizontally such that it is at the left side of the smallest rectangle enclosing the rotated material. The updated  $\langle box \rangle$  will be an hbox, irrespective of the nature of the  $\langle box \rangle$  before the rotation is applied. The rotation applies within the current  $\text{\TeX}$  group level.

**This function is experimental**

---

```
\box_scale:Nnn \box_scale:Nnn <box> {<x-scale>} {<y-scale>}
\box_scale:cnn
```

---

New: 2011-09-02

Updated: 2011-10-22

---

Scales the  $\langle box \rangle$  by factors  $\langle x-scale \rangle$  and  $\langle y-scale \rangle$  in the horizontal and vertical directions, respectively (both scales are integer expressions). The updated  $\langle box \rangle$  will be an hbox, irrespective of the nature of the  $\langle box \rangle$  before the scaling is applied. Negative scalings will cause the material in the  $\langle box \rangle$  to be reversed in direction, but the reference point of the  $\langle box \rangle$  will be unchanged. The scaling applies within the current  $\text{\TeX}$  group level.

**This function is experimental**



## 130 Viewing part of a box

---

`\box_clip:N`  
`\box_clip:c`  


---

New: 2011-11-13

`\box_clip:N`  $\langle box \rangle$

Clips the  $\langle box \rangle$  in the output so that only material inside the bounding box is displayed in the output. The updated  $\langle box \rangle$  will be an hbox, irrespective of the nature of the  $\langle box \rangle$  before the clipping is applied. The clipping applies within the current T<sub>E</sub>X group level.

**This function is experimental**

**T<sub>E</sub>Xhackers note:** Clipping is implemented by the driver, and as such the full content of the box is places in the output file. Thus clipping does not remove any information from the raw output, and hidden material can therefore be viewed by direct examination of the file.

---

`\box_trim:Nnnnn`  
`\box_trim:cnnnn`  


---

New: 2011-11-13

`\box_trim:Nnnnn`  $\langle box \rangle$   $\{\langle left \rangle\}$   $\{\langle bottom \rangle\}$   $\{\langle right \rangle\}$   $\{\langle top \rangle\}$

Adjusts the bounding box of the  $\langle box \rangle$   $\langle left \rangle$  is removed from the left-hand edge of the bounding box,  $\langle right \rangle$  from the right-hand edge and so fourth. All adjustments are *dimension expressions*. Material output of the bounding box will still be displayed in the output unless `\box_clip:N` is subsequently applied. The updated  $\langle box \rangle$  will be an hbox, irrespective of the nature of the  $\langle box \rangle$  before the viewport operation is applied. The clipping applies within the current T<sub>E</sub>X group level.

**This function is experimental**

---

`\box_viewport:Nnnnn`  
`\box_viewport:cnnnn`  


---

New: 2011-11-13

`\box_viewport:Nnnnn`  $\langle box \rangle$   $\{\langle llx \rangle\}$   $\{\langle lly \rangle\}$   $\{\langle urx \rangle\}$   $\{\langle ury \rangle\}$

Adjusts the bounding box of the  $\langle box \rangle$  such that it has lower-left co-ordinates ( $\langle llx \rangle$ ,  $\langle lly \rangle$ ) and upper-right co-ordinates ( $\langle urx \rangle$ ,  $\langle ury \rangle$ ). All four co-ordinate positions are *dimension expressions*. Material output of the bounding box will still be displayed in the output unless `\box_clip:N` is subsequently applied. The updated  $\langle box \rangle$  will be an hbox, irrespective of the nature of the  $\langle box \rangle$  before the viewport operation is applied. The clipping applies within the current T<sub>E</sub>X group level.

**This function is experimental**

## 131 Box conditionals

---

`\box_if_empty_p:N` ★  
`\box_if_empty_p:c` ★  
`\box_if_empty:NTF` ★  
`\box_if_empty:cTF` ★  


---

`\box_if_empty_p:N`  $\langle box \rangle$

`\box_if_empty:NTF`  $\langle box \rangle$   $\{\langle true code \rangle\}$   $\{\langle false code \rangle\}$

Tests if  $\langle box \rangle$  is a empty (equal to `\c_empty_box`).

---

`\box_if_horizontal_p:N` ★  
`\box_if_horizontal_p:c` ★  
`\box_if_horizontal:NTF` ★  
`\box_if_horizontal:cTF` ★  


---

`\box_if_horizontal_p:N`  $\langle box \rangle$

`\box_if_horizontal:NTF`  $\langle box \rangle$   $\{\langle true code \rangle\}$   $\{\langle false code \rangle\}$

Tests if  $\langle box \rangle$  is a horizontal box.

---

<code>\box_if_vertical_p:N</code> *	<code>\box_if_vertical_p:N</code> $\langle box \rangle$
<code>\box_if_vertical_p:c</code> *	<code>\box_if_vertical:NTF</code> $\langle box \rangle$ $\{\langle true\ code \rangle\}$ $\{\langle false\ code \rangle\}$
<code>\box_if_vertical:NTF</code> *	Tests if $\langle box \rangle$ is a vertical box.
<code>\box_if_vertical:cTF</code> *	

---

## 132 The last box inserted

---

<code>\box_set_to_last:N</code>	<code>\box_set_to_last:N</code> $\langle box \rangle$
<code>\box_set_to_last:c</code>	Sets the $\langle box \rangle$ equal to the last item (box) added to the current partial list, removing the item from the list at the same time. When applied to the main vertical list, the $\langle box \rangle$ will always be void as it is not possible to recover the last added item.
<code>\box_gset_to_last:N</code>	
<code>\box_gset_to_last:c</code>	

---

## 133 Constant boxes

---

<code>\c_empty_box</code>	This is a permanently empty box, which is neither set as horizontal nor vertical.
---------------------------	---

---

## 134 Scratch boxes

---

<code>\l_tmpa_box</code>	Scratch boxes for local assignment. These are never used by the kernel code, and so are safe for use with any L <sup>A</sup> T <sub>E</sub> X3-defined function. However, they may be overwritten by other non-kernel code and so should only be used for short-term storage.
<code>\l_tmpb_box</code>	

---

## 135 Viewing box contents

---

<code>\box_show:N</code>	<code>\box_show:N</code> $\langle box \rangle$
<code>\box_show:c</code>	Writes the contents of $\langle box \rangle$ to the log file.

---

**T<sub>E</sub>Xhackers note:** This is a wrapper around the T<sub>E</sub>X primitive `\showbox`.

## 136 Horizontal mode boxes

---

<code>\hbox:n</code>	<code>\hbox:n</code> $\{\langle contents \rangle\}$
	Typesets the $\langle contents \rangle$ into a horizontal box of natural width and then includes this box in the current list for typesetting.

---

**T<sub>E</sub>Xhackers note:** This is the T<sub>E</sub>X primitive `\hbox`.

<hr/> <hr/> <code>\hbox_to_wd:nn</code>	<code>\hbox_to_wd:nn {&lt;dimexpr&gt;} {&lt;contents&gt;}</code>  Typesets the $\langle contents \rangle$ into a horizontal box of width $\langle dimexpr \rangle$ and then includes this box in the current list for typesetting.
<hr/> <hr/> <code>\hbox_to_zero:n</code>	<code>\hbox_to_zero:n {&lt;contents&gt;}</code>  Typesets the $\langle contents \rangle$ into a horizontal box of zero width and then includes this box in the current list for typesetting.
<hr/> <hr/> <code>\hbox_set:Nn</code> <code>\hbox_set:cn</code> <code>\hbox_gset:Nn</code> <code>\hbox_gset:cn</code>	<code>\hbox_set:Nn &lt;box&gt; {&lt;contents&gt;}</code>  Typesets the $\langle contents \rangle$ at natural width and then stores the result inside the $\langle box \rangle$ .
<hr/> <hr/> <code>\hbox_set_to_wd:Nnn</code> <code>\hbox_set_to_wd:cnn</code> <code>\hbox_gset_to_wd:Nnn</code> <code>\hbox_gset_to_wd:cnn</code>	<code>\hbox_set_to_wd:Nnn &lt;box&gt; {&lt;dimexpr&gt;} {&lt;contents&gt;}</code>  Typesets the $\langle contents \rangle$ to the width given by the $\langle dimexpr \rangle$ and then stores the result inside the $\langle box \rangle$ .
<hr/> <hr/> <code>\hbox_overlap_right:n</code>	<code>\hbox_overlap_right:n {&lt;contents&gt;}</code>  Typesets the $\langle contents \rangle$ into a horizontal box of zero width such that material will protrude to the right of the insertion point.
<hr/> <hr/> <code>\hbox_overlap_left:n</code>	<code>\hbox_overlap_left:n {&lt;contents&gt;}</code>  Typesets the $\langle contents \rangle$ into a horizontal box of zero width such that material will protrude to the left of the insertion point.
<hr/> <hr/> <code>\hbox_set:Nw</code> <code>\hbox_set:cw</code> <code>\hbox_set_end</code> <code>\hbox_gset:Nw</code> <code>\hbox_gset:cw</code> <code>\hbox_gset_end</code>	<code>\hbox_set:Nw &lt;box&gt; &lt;contents&gt; \hbox_set_end:</code>  Typesets the $\langle contents \rangle$ at natural width and then stores the result inside the $\langle box \rangle$ . In contrast to <code>\hbox_set:Nn</code> this function does not absorb the argument when finding the $\langle content \rangle$ , and so can be used in circumstances where the $\langle content \rangle$ may not be a simple argument.
<hr/> <hr/> <code>\hbox_unpack:N</code> <code>\hbox_unpack:c</code>	<code>\hbox_unpack:N &lt;box&gt;</code>  Unpacks the content of the horizontal $\langle box \rangle$ , retaining any stretching or shrinking applied when the $\langle box \rangle$ was set.

**T<sub>E</sub>Xhackers note:** This is the T<sub>E</sub>X primitive `\unhcopy`.

---

`\hbox_unpack_clear:N`  
`\hbox_unpack_clear:c`

---

`\hbox_unpack_clear:N`  $\langle box \rangle$

Unpacks the content of the horizontal  $\langle box \rangle$ , retaining any stretching or shrinking applied when the  $\langle box \rangle$  was set. The  $\langle box \rangle$  is then cleared globally.

**T<sub>E</sub>Xhackers note:** This is the T<sub>E</sub>X primitive `\unhbox`.

## 137 Vertical mode boxes

Vertical boxes inherit their baseline from their contents. The standard case is that the baseline of the box is at the same position as that of the last item added to the box. This means that the box will have no depth unless the last item added to it had depth. As a result most vertical boxes have a large height value and small or zero depth. The exception are `_top` boxes, where the reference point is that of the first item added. These tend to have a large depth and small height, although the latter will typically be non-zero.

---

`\vbox:n`

---

`\vbox:n`  $\{\langle contents \rangle\}$

Updated: 2011-12-18

---

Typesets the  $\langle contents \rangle$  into a vertical box of natural height and includes this box in the current list for typesetting.

**T<sub>E</sub>Xhackers note:** This is the T<sub>E</sub>X primitive `\vbox`.

---

`\vbox_top:n`

---

`\vbox_top:n`  $\{\langle contents \rangle\}$

Updated: 2011-12-18

---

Typesets the  $\langle contents \rangle$  into a vertical box of natural height and includes this box in the current list for typesetting. The baseline of the box will be equal to that of the *first* item added to the box.

**T<sub>E</sub>Xhackers note:** This is the T<sub>E</sub>X primitive `\vtop`.

---

`\vbox_to_ht:nn`

---

`\vbox_to_ht:nn`  $\{\langle dimexpr \rangle\} \{\langle contents \rangle\}$

Updated: 2011-12-18

---

Typesets the  $\langle contents \rangle$  into a vertical box of height  $\langle dimexpr \rangle$  and then includes this box in the current list for typesetting.

---

`\vbox_to_zero:n`

---

`\vbox_to_zero:n`  $\{\langle contents \rangle\}$

Updated: 2011-12-18

---

Typesets the  $\langle contents \rangle$  into a vertical box of zero height and then includes this box in the current list for typesetting.

---

`\vbox_set:Nn`

`\vbox_set:Nn`  $\langle box \rangle \{\langle contents \rangle\}$

`\vbox_set:cn`

Typesets the  $\langle contents \rangle$  at natural height and then stores the result inside the  $\langle box \rangle$ .

`\vbox_gset:Nn`

`\vbox_gset:cn`

---

Updated: 2011-12-18

---

---

```
\vbox_set_top:Nn
\vbox_set_top:cn
\vbox_gset_top:Nn
\vbox_gset_top:cn
```

---

Updated: 2011-12-18

---

```
\vbox_set_top:Nn <box> {<contents>}
```

Typesets the  $\langle contents \rangle$  at natural height and then stores the result inside the  $\langle box \rangle$ . The baseline of the box will be equal to that of the *first* item added to the box.

---

```
\vbox_set_to_ht:Nnn
\vbox_set_to_ht:cnn
\vbox_gset_to_ht:Nnn
\vbox_gset_to_ht:cnn
```

---

Updated: 2011-12-18

---

```
\vbox_set_to_ht:Nnn <box> {<dimexpr>} {<contents>}
```

Typesets the  $\langle contents \rangle$  to the height given by the  $\langle dimexpr \rangle$  and then stores the result inside the  $\langle box \rangle$ .

---

```
\vbox_set:Nw
\vbox_set:cw
\vbox_set_end
\vbox_gset:Nw
\vbox_gset:cw
\vbox_gset_end
```

---

Updated: 2011-12-18

---

```
\vbox_begin:Nw <box> <contents> \vbox_set_end:
```

Typesets the  $\langle contents \rangle$  at natural height and then stores the result inside the  $\langle box \rangle$ . In contrast to `\vbox_set:Nn` this function does not absorb the argument when finding the  $\langle content \rangle$ , and so can be used in circumstances where the  $\langle content \rangle$  may not be a simple argument.

---

```
\vbox_set_split_to_ht:Nnn
```

---

Updated: 2011-10-22

---

```
\vbox_set_split_to_ht:Nnn <box1> <box2> {<dimexpr>}
```

Sets  $\langle box1 \rangle$  to contain material to the height given by the  $\langle dimexpr \rangle$  by removing content from the top of  $\langle box2 \rangle$  (which must be a vertical box).

**T<sub>E</sub>Xhackers note:** This is the T<sub>E</sub>X primitive `\vsplit`.

---

```
\vbox_unpack:N
\vbox_unpack:c
```

---

```
\vbox_unpack:N <box>
```

Unpacks the content of the vertical  $\langle box \rangle$ , retaining any stretching or shrinking applied when the  $\langle box \rangle$  was set.

**T<sub>E</sub>Xhackers note:** This is the T<sub>E</sub>X primitive `\unvcopy`.

---

```
\vbox_unpack_clear:N
\vbox_unpack_clear:c
```

---

```
\vbox_unpack:N <box>
```

Unpacks the content of the vertical  $\langle box \rangle$ , retaining any stretching or shrinking applied when the  $\langle box \rangle$  was set. The  $\langle box \rangle$  is then cleared globally.

**T<sub>E</sub>Xhackers note:** This is the T<sub>E</sub>X primitive `\unvbox`.

## 138 Primitive box conditionals

---

---

<code>\if_hbox:N</code>	★
-------------------------	---

---

```
\if_hbox:N <box>
  <true code>
\else:
  <false code>
\fi:
```

Tests is  $\langle box \rangle$  is a horizontal box.

**T<sub>E</sub>Xhackers note:** This is the T<sub>E</sub>X primitive `\ifhbox`.

---

---

<code>\if_vbox:N</code>	★
-------------------------	---

---

```
\if_vbox:N <box>
  <true code>
\else:
  <false code>
\fi:
```

Tests is  $\langle box \rangle$  is a vertical box.

**T<sub>E</sub>Xhackers note:** This is the T<sub>E</sub>X primitive `\ifvbox`.

---

---

<code>\if_box_empty:N</code>	★
------------------------------	---

---

```
\if_box_empty:N <box>
  <true code>
\else:
  <false code>
\fi:
```

Tests is  $\langle box \rangle$  is an empty (void) box.

**T<sub>E</sub>Xhackers note:** This is the T<sub>E</sub>X primitive `\ifvoid`.

## 139 Experimental box functions

---

---

<code>\box_show:Nnn</code>	
----------------------------	--

---

```
\box_show:Nnn <box> <int 1> <int 2>
```

---

<code>\box_show:cnn</code>
----------------------------

---

New: 2011-11-21

Display the contents of  $\langle box \rangle$  in the terminal, showing the first  $\langle int\ 1 \rangle$  items of the box, and descending into  $\langle int\ 1 \rangle$  levels of nesting.

**T<sub>E</sub>Xhackers note:** This is a wrapper around the T<sub>E</sub>X primitives `\showbox`, `\showboxbreadth` and `\showboxdepth`.

---

---

<code>\box_show_full:N</code>	
-------------------------------	--

---

```
\box_show_full:N <box>
```

---

<code>\box_show_full:c</code>
-------------------------------

---

New: 2011-11-22

Display the contents of  $\langle box \rangle$  in the terminal, showing all items in the box.

## Part XVI

# The l3coffins package

## Coffin code layer

The material in this module provides the low-level support system for coffins. For details about the design concept of a coffin, see the xcoffins module (in the l3experimental bundle).

### 140 Creating and initialising coffins

---

`\coffin_new:N``\coffin_new:N <coffin>``\coffin_new:c`

Creates a new  $\langle coffin \rangle$  or raises an error if the name is already taken. The declaration is global. The  $\langle coffin \rangle$  will initially be empty.

---

New: 2011-08-17

---

---

`\coffin_clear:N``\coffin_clear:N <coffin>``\coffin_clear:c`

Clears the content of the  $\langle coffin \rangle$  within the current T<sub>E</sub>X group level.

---

New: 2011-08-17

---

---

`\coffin_set_eq:NN``\coffin_set_eq:NN <coffin1> <coffin2>``\coffin_set_eq:(Nc|cN|cc)`

Sets both the content and poles of  $\langle coffin1 \rangle$  equal to those of  $\langle coffin2 \rangle$  within the current T<sub>E</sub>X group level.

---

New: 2011-08-17

---

### 141 Setting coffin content and poles

All coffin functions create and manipulate coffins locally within the current T<sub>E</sub>X group level.

---

`\hcoffin_set:Nn``\hcoffin_set:Nn <coffin> {\material}``\hcoffin_set:cn`

Typesets the  $\langle material \rangle$  in horizontal mode, storing the result in the  $\langle coffin \rangle$ . The standard poles for the  $\langle coffin \rangle$  are then set up based on the size of the typeset material.

---

New: 2011-08-17

Updated: 2011-09-03

---

---

`\hcoffin_set:Nw``\hcoffin_set:Nw <coffin> <material> \hcoffin_set_end:``\hcoffin_set:cw``\hcoffin_set_end`

Typesets the  $\langle material \rangle$  in horizontal mode, storing the result in the  $\langle coffin \rangle$ . The standard poles for the  $\langle coffin \rangle$  are then set up based on the size of the typeset material. These functions are useful for setting the entire contents of an environment in a coffin.

---

New: 2011-09-10

---

---

<code>\vcoffin_set:Nnn</code>	<code>\vcoffin_set:Nnn &lt;coffin&gt; {&lt;width&gt;} {&lt;material&gt;}</code>
<code>\vcoffin_set:cnn</code>	

---

New: 2011-08-17  
Updated: 2011-09-03

---

Typesets the  $\langle material \rangle$  in vertical mode constrained to the given  $\langle width \rangle$  and stores the result in the  $\langle coffin \rangle$ . The standard poles for the  $\langle coffin \rangle$  are then set up based on the size of the typeset material.

---

<code>\vcoffin_set:Nnw</code>	<code>\vcoffin_set:Nnw &lt;coffin&gt; {&lt;width&gt;} &lt;material&gt; \vcoffin_set_end:</code>
<code>\vcoffin_set:cnnw</code>	
<code>\vcoffin_set_end</code>	

---

New: 2011-09-10

---

Typesets the  $\langle material \rangle$  in vertical mode constrained to the given  $\langle width \rangle$  and stores the result in the  $\langle coffin \rangle$ . The standard poles for the  $\langle coffin \rangle$  are then set up based on the size of the typeset material. These functions are useful for setting the entire contents of an environment in a coffin.

---

<code>\coffin_set_horizontal_pole:Nnn</code>	<code>\coffin_set_horizontal_pole:Nnn &lt;coffin&gt;</code>
<code>\coffin_set_horizontal_pole:cnn</code>	<code>{&lt;pole&gt;} {&lt;offset&gt;}</code>

---

New: 2011-08-17

---

Sets the  $\langle pole \rangle$  to run horizontally through the  $\langle coffin \rangle$ . The  $\langle pole \rangle$  will be located at the  $\langle offset \rangle$  from the bottom edge of the bounding box of the  $\langle coffin \rangle$ . The  $\langle offset \rangle$  should be given as a dimension expression; this may include the terms `\TotalHeight`, `\Height`, `\Depth` and `\Width`, which will evaluate to the appropriate dimensions of the  $\langle coffin \rangle$ .

---

<code>\coffin_set_vertical_pole:Nnn</code>	<code>\coffin_set_vertical_pole:Nnn &lt;coffin&gt; {&lt;pole&gt;} {&lt;offset&gt;}</code>
<code>\coffin_set_vertical_pole:cnn</code>	

---

New: 2011-08-17

---

Sets the  $\langle pole \rangle$  to run vertically through the  $\langle coffin \rangle$ . The  $\langle pole \rangle$  will be located at the  $\langle offset \rangle$  from the left-hand edge of the bounding box of the  $\langle coffin \rangle$ . The  $\langle offset \rangle$  should be given as a dimension expression; this may include the terms `\TotalHeight`, `\Height`, `\Depth` and `\Width`, which will evaluate to the appropriate dimensions of the  $\langle coffin \rangle$ .

## 142 Coffin transformations

---

<code>\coffin_resize:Nnn</code>	<code>\coffin_resize:Nnn &lt;coffin&gt; {&lt;width&gt;} {&lt;total-height&gt;}</code>
<code>\coffin_resize:cnn</code>	

---

New: 2011-09-02

---

Resized the  $\langle coffin \rangle$  to  $\langle width \rangle$  and  $\langle total-height \rangle$ , both of which should be given as dimension expressions. These may include the terms `\TotalHeight`, `\Height`, `\Depth` and `\Width`, which will evaluate to the appropriate dimensions of the  $\langle coffin \rangle$ .

**This function is experimental.**

---

<code>\coffin_rotate:Nn</code>	<code>\coffin_rotate:Nn &lt;coffin&gt; {&lt;angle&gt;}</code>
<code>\coffin_rotate:cnn</code>	

---

New: 2011-09-02

---

Rotates the  $\langle coffin \rangle$  by the given  $\langle angle \rangle$  (given in degrees counter-clockwise). This process will rotate both the coffin content and poles. Multiple rotations will not result in the bounding box of the coffin growing unnecessarily.



---

`\coffin_scale:Nnn`  
`\coffin_scale:cnn`

---

New: 2011-09-02

---

`\coffin_scale:Nnn`  $\langle coffin \rangle$   $\{ \langle x-scale \rangle \}$   $\{ \langle y-scale \rangle \}$

Scales the  $\langle coffin \rangle$  by a factors  $\langle x-scale \rangle$  and  $\langle y-scale \rangle$  in the horizontal and vertical directions, respectively. The two scale factors should be given as real numbers.

**This function is experimental.**

## 143 Joining and using coffins

---

`\coffin_attach:NnnNnnnn`

`\coffin_attach:(cnnNnnnn|NnnNnnnn|cnnNnnnn)`

---

`\coffin_attach:NnnNnnnn`

$\langle coffin1 \rangle$   $\{ \langle coffin1-pole1 \rangle \}$   $\{ \langle coffin1-pole2 \rangle \}$   
 $\langle coffin2 \rangle$   $\{ \langle coffin2-pole1 \rangle \}$   $\{ \langle coffin2-pole2 \rangle \}$   
 $\{ \langle x-offset \rangle \}$   $\{ \langle y-offset \rangle \}$

This function attaches  $\langle coffin2 \rangle$  to  $\langle coffin1 \rangle$  such that the bounding box of  $\langle coffin1 \rangle$  is not altered, *i.e.*  $\langle coffin2 \rangle$  can protrude outside of the bounding box of the coffin. The alignment is carried out by first calculating  $\langle handle1 \rangle$ , the point of intersection of  $\langle coffin1-pole1 \rangle$  and  $\langle coffin1-pole2 \rangle$ , and  $\langle handle2 \rangle$ , the point of intersection of  $\langle coffin2-pole1 \rangle$  and  $\langle coffin2-pole2 \rangle$ .  $\langle coffin2 \rangle$  is then attached to  $\langle coffin1 \rangle$  such that the relationship between  $\langle handle1 \rangle$  and  $\langle handle2 \rangle$  is described by the  $\langle x-offset \rangle$  and  $\langle y-offset \rangle$ . The two offsets should be given as dimension expressions.

---

`\coffin_join:NnnNnnnn`

`\coffin_join:(cnnNnnnn|NnnNnnnn|cnnNnnnn)`

---

`\coffin_join:NnnNnnnn`

$\langle coffin1 \rangle$   $\{ \langle coffin1-pole1 \rangle \}$   $\{ \langle coffin1-pole2 \rangle \}$   
 $\langle coffin2 \rangle$   $\{ \langle coffin2-pole1 \rangle \}$   $\{ \langle coffin2-pole2 \rangle \}$   
 $\{ \langle x-offset \rangle \}$   $\{ \langle y-offset \rangle \}$

This function joins  $\langle coffin2 \rangle$  to  $\langle coffin1 \rangle$  such that the bounding box of  $\langle coffin1 \rangle$  may expand. The new bounding box will cover the area containing the bounding boxes of the two original coffins. The alignment is carried out by first calculating  $\langle handle1 \rangle$ , the point of intersection of  $\langle coffin1-pole1 \rangle$  and  $\langle coffin1-pole2 \rangle$ , and  $\langle handle2 \rangle$ , the point of intersection of  $\langle coffin2-pole1 \rangle$  and  $\langle coffin2-pole2 \rangle$ .  $\langle coffin2 \rangle$  is then attached to  $\langle coffin1 \rangle$  such that the relationship between  $\langle handle1 \rangle$  and  $\langle handle2 \rangle$  is described by the  $\langle x-offset \rangle$  and  $\langle y-offset \rangle$ . The two offsets should be given as dimension expressions.

---

`\coffin_typeset:Nnnnn`

`\coffin_typeset:cnnnn`

---

`\coffin_typeset:Nnnnn`  $\langle coffin \rangle$   $\{ \langle pole1 \rangle \}$   $\{ \langle pole2 \rangle \}$   
 $\{ \langle x-offset \rangle \}$   $\{ \langle y-offset \rangle \}$

Typesetting is carried out by first calculating  $\langle handle \rangle$ , the point of intersection of  $\langle pole1 \rangle$  and  $\langle pole2 \rangle$ . The coffin is then typeset such that the relationship between the current reference point in the document and the  $\langle handle \rangle$  is described by the  $\langle x-offset \rangle$  and  $\langle y-offset \rangle$ . The two offsets should be given as dimension expressions. Typesetting a coffin is therefore analogous to carrying out an alignment where the “parent” coffin is the current insertion point.

## 144 Measuring coffins

<hr/> <code>\coffin_dp:N</code> <hr/>	<code>\coffin_dp:N &lt;coffin&gt;</code>
<code>\coffin_dp:c</code> <hr/>	Calculates the depth (below the baseline) of the $\langle coffin \rangle$ in a form suitable for use in a $\langle dimension expression \rangle$ .
<hr/> <code>\coffin_ht:N</code> <hr/>	<code>\coffin_ht:N &lt;coffin&gt;</code>
<code>\coffin_ht:c</code> <hr/>	Calculates the height (above the baseline) of the $\langle coffin \rangle$ in a form suitable for use in a $\langle dimension expression \rangle$ .
<hr/> <code>\coffin_wd:N</code> <hr/>	<code>\coffin_wd:N &lt;coffin&gt;</code>
<code>\coffin_wd:c</code> <hr/>	Calculates the width of the $\langle coffin \rangle$ in a form suitable for use in a $\langle dimension expression \rangle$ .

## 145 Coffin diagnostics

<hr/> <code>\coffin_display_handles:Nn</code> <hr/>	<code>\coffin_display_handles:Nn &lt;coffin&gt; {&lt;colour&gt;}</code>
<code>\coffin_display_handles:cn</code> <hr/>	This function first calculates the intersections between all of the $\langle poles \rangle$ of the $\langle coffin \rangle$ to give a set of $\langle handles \rangle$ . It then prints the $\langle coffin \rangle$ at the current location in the source, with the position of the $\langle handles \rangle$ marked on the coffin. The $\langle handles \rangle$ will be labelled as part of this process: the locations of the $\langle handles \rangle$ and the labels are both printed in the $\langle colour \rangle$ specified.
Updated: 2011-09-02 <hr/>	
<hr/> <code>\coffin_mark_handle:Nnnn</code> <hr/>	<code>\coffin_mark_handle:Nnnn &lt;coffin&gt; {&lt;pole<sub>1</sub>&gt;} {&lt;pole<sub>2</sub>&gt;} {&lt;colour&gt;}</code>
<code>\coffin_mark_handle:cnnn</code> <hr/>	This function first calculates the $\langle handle \rangle$ for the $\langle coffin \rangle$ as defined by the intersection of $\langle pole_1 \rangle$ and $\langle pole_2 \rangle$ . It then marks the position of the $\langle handle \rangle$ on the $\langle coffin \rangle$ . The $\langle handle \rangle$ will be labelled as part of this process: the location of the $\langle handle \rangle$ and the label are both printed in the $\langle colour \rangle$ specified.
Updated: 2011-09-02 <hr/>	
<hr/> <code>\coffin_show_structure:N</code> <hr/>	<code>\coffin_show_structure:N &lt;coffin&gt;</code>
<code>\coffin_show_structure:c</code> <hr/>	This function shows the structural information about the $\langle coffin \rangle$ in the terminal. The width, height and depth of the typeset material are given, along with the location of all of the poles of the coffin.
Updated: 2012-01-01 <hr/>	Notice that the poles of a coffin are defined by four values: the $x$ and $y$ co-ordinates of a point that the pole passes through and the $x$ - and $y$ -components of a vector denoting the direction of the pole. It is the ratio between the later, rather than the absolute values, which determines the direction of the pole.

## Part XVII

# The l3color package

## Colour support

This module provides support for colour in L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X3. At present, the material here is mainly intended to support a small number of low-level requirements in other l3kernel modules.

### 146 Colour in boxes

Controlling the colour of text in boxes requires a small number of control functions, so that the boxed material uses the colour at the point where it is set, rather than where it is used.

---

```
\color_group_begin  
\color_group_end
```

---

New: 2011-09-03

```
\color_group_begin:
```

```
...
```

```
\color_group_end:
```

Creates a colour group: one used to “trap” colour settings.

---

```
\color_ensure_current
```

---

New: 2011-09-03

```
\color_ensure_current:
```

Ensures that material inside a box will use the foreground colour at the point where the box is set, rather than that in force when the box is used. This function should usually be used within a `\color_group_begin: ... \color_group_end: group`.

## Part XVIII

# The l3io package

## Input–output operations

Reading and writing from file streams is handled in L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X3 using functions with prefixes `\iow_...` (file reading) and `\ior_...` (file writing). Many of the basic functions are very similar, with reading and writing using the same syntax and function concepts. As a result, the reading and writing functions are documented together where this makes sense.

As T<sub>E</sub>X is limited to 16 input streams and 16 output streams, direct use of the streams by the programmer is not supported in L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X3. Instead, an internal pool of streams is maintained, and these are allocated and deallocated as needed by other modules. As a result, the programmer should close streams when they are no longer needed, to release them for other processes.

Reading from or writing to a file requires a  $\langle stream \rangle$  to be used. This is a csname which refers to the file being processed, and is independent of the name of the file (except of course that the file name is needed when the file is opened).

### 147 Managing streams

---

`\ior_new:N`  
`\ior_new:c`  
`\iow_new:N`  
`\io_new:c`

---

New: 2011-09-26  
Updated: 2011-12-27

---

---

`\ior_open:Nn`  
`\ior_open:cn`

---

Updated: 2012-01-25

---

`\ior_new:Nn`  $\langle stream \rangle$

Globally reserves the name of the  $\langle stream \rangle$ , either for reading or for writing as appropriate. The  $\langle stream \rangle$  is not opened until the appropriate `\..._open:Nn` function is used. Attempting to use a  $\langle stream \rangle$  which has not been opened will result in a T<sub>E</sub>X error.

`\ior_open:Nn`  $\langle stream \rangle$   $\{\langle file name \rangle\}$

Opens  $\langle file name \rangle$  for reading using  $\langle stream \rangle$  as the control sequence for file access. If the  $\langle stream \rangle$  was already open it is closed before the new operation begins. The  $\langle stream \rangle$  is available for access immediately and will remain allocated to  $\langle file name \rangle$  until a `\ior_close:N` instruction is given or the file ends.

**T<sub>E</sub>Xhackers note:** The  $\langle file name \rangle$  may contain both literal items and expandable content, which should on full expansion be the desired file name. Any active characters (as declared in `\l_char_active_seq`) will *not* be expanded, allowing the direct use of these in file names.

---

`\iow_open:Nn`  
`\iow_open:cn`  

---

Updated: 2012-01-25

---

`\iow_open:Nn <stream> {{file name}}`

Opens `<file name>` for writing using `<stream>` as the control sequence for file access. If the `<stream>` was already open it is closed before the new operation begins. The `<stream>` is available for access immediately and will remain allocated to `<file name>` until a `\iow_close:N` instruction is given or the file ends. Opening a file for writing will clear any existing content in the file (*i.e.* writing is *not* additive).

**T<sub>E</sub>Xhackers note:** The `<file name>` may contain both literal items and expandable content, which should on full expansion be the desired file name. Any active characters (as declared in `\l_char_active_seq`) will *not* be expanded, allowing the direct use of these in file names.

---

`\ior_close:N`  
`\ior_close:c`  

---

Updated: 2011-12-27

---

`\ior_close:N <stream>`

Closes the `<stream>`. Streams should always be closed when they are finished with as this ensures that they remain available to other programmer.

---

`\iow_close:N`  
`\iow_close:c`  

---

Updated: 2011-12-27

---

`\iow_close:N <stream>`

Closes the `<stream>`. Streams should always be closed when they are finished with as this ensures that they remain available to other programmer.

---

`\ior_list_streams`  
`\iow_list_streams`  

---

`\ior_list_streams:`  
`\iow_list_streams:`

Displays a list of the file names associated with each open stream: intended for tracking down problems.

## 148 Writing to files

---

`\iow_now:Nn`  
`\iow_now:Nx`  

---

`\iow_now:Nn <stream> {{tokens}}`

This functions writes `<tokens>` to the specified `<stream>` immediately (*i.e.* the write operation is called on expansion of `\iow_now:Nn`).

**T<sub>E</sub>Xhackers note:** `\iow_now:Nx` is a protected macro which expands to the two T<sub>E</sub>X primitives `\immediate\write`.

---

`\iow_log:n`  
`\iow_log:x`  

---

`\iow_log:n {{tokens}}`

This function writes the given `<tokens>` to the log (transcript) file immediately: it is a dedicated version of `\iow_now:Nn`.

---

`\iow_term:n`  
`\iow_term:x`  

---

`\iow_term:n {{tokens}}`

This function writes the given `<tokens>` to the terminal file immediately: it is a dedicated version of `\iow_now:Nn`.

<hr/> <code>\iow_now_when_avail:Nn</code> <hr/> <code>\iow_now_when_avail:Nx</code> <hr/>	<code>\iow_now_when_avail:Nn &lt;stream&gt; {&lt;tokens&gt;}</code> <p>If <math>\langle stream \rangle</math> is open, writes the <math>\langle tokens \rangle</math> to the <math>\langle stream \rangle</math> in the same manner as <code>\iow_now:Nn</code>. If the <math>\langle stream \rangle</math> is not open, the <math>\langle tokens \rangle</math> are simply thrown away.</p>
<hr/> <code>\iow_shipout:Nn</code> <hr/> <code>\iow_shipout:Nx</code> <hr/>	<code>\iow_shipout:Nn &lt;stream&gt; {&lt;tokens&gt;}</code> <p>This function writes <math>\langle tokens \rangle</math> to the specified <math>\langle stream \rangle</math> when the current page is finalised (<i>i.e.</i> at shipout). The x-type variants expand the <math>\langle tokens \rangle</math> at the point where the function is used but <i>not</i> when the resulting tokens are written to the <math>\langle stream \rangle</math> (<i>cf.</i> <code>\iow_shipout_x:Nn</code>).</p>
<hr/> <code>\iow_shipout_x:Nn</code> <hr/> <code>\iow_shipout_x:Nx</code> <hr/>	<code>\iow_shipout_x:Nn &lt;stream&gt; {&lt;tokens&gt;}</code> <p>This function writes <math>\langle tokens \rangle</math> to the specified <math>\langle stream \rangle</math> when the current page is finalised (<i>i.e.</i> at shipout). The <math>\langle tokens \rangle</math> are expanded at the time of writing in addition to any expansion when the function is used. This makes these functions suitable for including material finalised during the page building process (such as the page number integer).</p>
<p><b>T<sub>E</sub>Xhackers note:</b> <code>\iow_shipout_x:Nn</code> is the T<sub>E</sub>X primitive <code>\write</code> renamed.</p>	
<hr/> <code>\iow_char:N</code> ★ <hr/>	<code>\iow_char:N &lt;token&gt;</code> <p>Inserts <math>\langle token \rangle</math> into the output stream. Useful when trying to write difficult characters such as %, {, }, <i>etc.</i> in messages, for example:</p> <p style="text-align: center;"><code>\iow_now:Nx \g_my_iow { \iow_char:N \{ text \iow_char:N \} }</code></p> <p>The function has no effect if writing is taking place without expansion (<i>e.g.</i> in the second argument of <code>\iow_now:Nn</code>).</p>
<hr/> <code>\iow_newline</code> ★ <hr/>	<code>\iow_newline:</code> <p>Function to add a new line within the <math>\langle tokens \rangle</math> written to a file. The function has no effect if writing is taking place without expansion (<i>e.g.</i> in the second argument of <code>\iow_now:Nn</code>).</p>

## 149 Wrapping lines in output

<hr/> <code>\iow_wrap:xnnnN</code> <hr/>	<code>\iow_wrap:xnnnN</code> $\{\langle text \rangle\}$ $\{\langle run-on text \rangle\}$ $\{\langle run-on length \rangle\}$ $\{\langle set up \rangle\}$ $\langle function \rangle$
Updated: 2011-09-21	<p>This function will wrap the <math>\langle text \rangle</math> to a fixed number of characters per line. At the start of each line which is wrapped, the <math>\langle run-on text \rangle</math> will be inserted. The line length targeted will be the value of <code>\l_iow_line_length_int</code> minus the <math>\langle run-on length \rangle</math>. The later value should be the number of characters in the <math>\langle run-on text \rangle</math>. Additional functions may be added to the wrapping by using the <math>\langle set up \rangle</math>, which is executed before the wrapping takes place. The result of the wrapping operation is passed as a braced argument to the <math>\langle function \rangle</math>, which will typically be a wrapper around a writing operation. Within the <math>\langle text \rangle</math>,</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <code>\</code> may be used to force a new line,</li> <li>• <code>\ </code> may be used to represent a forced space (for example after a control sequence),</li> <li>• <code>\#</code>, <code>\%</code>, <code>\{</code>, <code>\}</code>, <code>\~</code> may be used to represent the corresponding character,</li> <li>• <code>\iow_indent:n</code> may be used to indent a part of the message.</li> </ul> <p>Both the wrapping process and the subsequent write operation will perform x-type expansion. For this reason, material which is to be written “as is” should be given as the argument to <code>\token_to_str:N</code> or <code>\tl_to_str:n</code> (as appropriate) within the <math>\langle text \rangle</math>. The output of <code>\iow_wrap:xnnnN</code> (<i>i.e.</i> the argument passed to the <math>\langle function \rangle</math>) will consist of characters of category code 12 (other) and 10 (space) only. This means that the output will <i>not</i> expand further when written to a file.</p>
<hr/> <code>\iow_indent:n</code> <hr/>	<code>\iow_indent:n</code> $\{\langle text \rangle\}$
New: 2011-09-21	<p>In the context of <code>\iow_wrap:xnnnN</code> (for instance in messages), indents <math>\langle text \rangle</math> by four spaces. This function will not cause a line break, and only affects lines which start within the scope of the <math>\langle text \rangle</math>. In case the indented <math>\langle text \rangle</math> should appear on separate lines from the surrounding text, use <code>\</code> to force line breaks.</p>
<hr/> <code>\l_iow_line_length_int</code> <hr/>	<p>The maximum length of a line to be written by the <code>\iow_wrap:xnnnN</code> function. This value depends on the T<sub>E</sub>X system in use: the standard value is 78, which is typically correct for unmodified T<sub>E</sub>Xlive and MiK<sub>T</sub><sub>E</sub>X systems.</p>
<hr/> <code>\c_catcode_other_space_tl</code> <hr/>	Token list containing one character with category code 12, (“other”), and character code 32 (space).
New: 2011-09-05	

## 150 Reading from files

---

`\ior_to:NN`      `\ior_to:NN`  $\langle stream \rangle$   $\langle token\ list\ variable \rangle$

---

`\ior_gto:NN`

Functions that reads one or more lines (until an equal number of left and right braces are found) from the input  $\langle stream \rangle$  and stores the result in the  $\langle token\ list \rangle$  variable, locally or globally. If the  $\langle stream \rangle$  is not open, input is requested from the terminal. The material read from the  $\langle stream \rangle$  will be tokenized by T<sub>E</sub>X according to the category codes in force when the function is used.

**T<sub>E</sub>Xhackers note:** This protected macro expands to the T<sub>E</sub>X primitives `\read` or `\global\read` along with the `to` keyword.

---

`\ior_str_to:NN`      `\ior_str_to:NN`  $\langle stream \rangle$   $\langle token\ list\ variable \rangle$

---

`\ior_str_gto:NN`

Functions that reads one line from the input  $\langle stream \rangle$  and stores the result in the  $\langle token\ list \rangle$  variable, locally or globally. If the  $\langle stream \rangle$  is not open, input is requested from the terminal. The material read from the  $\langle stream \rangle$  as a series of tokens with category code 12 (other), with the exception of space characters which are given category code 10 (space).

**T<sub>E</sub>Xhackers note:** This protected macro expands to the  $\varepsilon$ -T<sub>E</sub>X primitives `\readline` or `\global\readline` along with the `to` keyword.

---

`\ior_if_eof_p:N` ★      `\ior_if_eof_p:N`  $\langle stream \rangle$   
`\ior_if_eof:NTF` ★      `\ior_if_eof:NTF`  $\langle stream \rangle$   $\{\langle true\ code \rangle\} \{\langle false\ code \rangle\}$

---

Updated: 2011-09-26

Tests if the end of a  $\langle stream \rangle$  has been reached during a reading operation. The test will also return a `true` value if the  $\langle stream \rangle$  is not open or the  $\langle file\ name \rangle$  associated with a  $\langle stream \rangle$  does not exist at all.

## 151 Constants

---

`\c_term_ior`      Constant input stream for reading from the terminal. Reading from this stream using `\ior_to:NN` or similar will result in a prompt from T<sub>E</sub>X of the form

---

`<tl>=`

---

`\c_log_ior`      Constant output streams for writing to the log and to the terminal (plus the log), respectively.  
`\c_term_ior`

---



## 152 Experimental functions

---

`\ior_map_inline:nn`

---

`\ior_map_inline:nn {<file name>} {<inline function>}`

Applies the *<inline function>* to *<items>* obtained by reading one or more lines (until an equal number of left and right braces are found) from the *<file>*. The *<inline function>* should consist of code which will receive the *<line>* as **#1**. One in line mapping can be nested inside another. If the file is not found, the *<inline function>* is never called.

---

`\ior_str_map_inline:nn`

---

`\ior_str_map_inline:nn {<file name>} {<inline function>}`

Applies the *<inline function>* to every *<line>* in the *<file>*. The material is read from the *<file>* as a series of tokens with category code 12 (other), with the exception of space characters which are given category code 10 (space). The *<inline function>* should consist of code which will receive the *<line>* as **#1**. One in line mapping can be nested inside another. If the file is not found, the *<inline function>* is never called.

## 153 Internal input–output functions

---

`\if_eof:w` ★

---

`\if_eof:w <stream>`  
`<true code>`  
`\else:`  
`<false code>`  
`\fi:`

Tests if the *<stream>* returns “end of file”, which is true for non-existent files. The `\else:` branch is optional.

**T<sub>E</sub>Xhackers note:** This is the T<sub>E</sub>X primitive `\ifeof`.

---

`\ior_open_unsafe:Nn`

---

`\iow_open_unsafe:Nn`

---

New: 2012-01-23

---

`\ior_open_unsafe:Nn <stream> {<file name>}`

These functions have identical syntax to the generally-available versions without the `_unsafe` suffix. However, these functions do not take precautions against active characters in the *<file name>*: they are therefore intended to be used by higher-level functions which have already fully expanded the *<file name>* and which need to perform multiple open or close operations. See for example the implementation of `\file_add_path:Nn`,

---

`\ior_raw_new:N`

---

`\ior_raw_new:c`

---

`\ior_raw_new:N <stream>`

Directly allocates a new stream for reading, bypassing the stack system. This is to be used only when a new stream is required at a T<sub>E</sub>X level, when a new stream is requested by the stack itself.

<hr/>	
<code>\iow_raw_new:N</code>	<code>\iow_raw_new:N</code> $\langle stream \rangle$
<code>\iow_raw_new:c</code>	Directly allocates a new stream for writing, bypassing the stack system. This is to be used only when a new stream is required at a T <sub>E</sub> X level, when a new stream is requested by the stack itself.
<hr/>	

## Part XIX

# The l3msg package

## Messages

Messages need to be passed to the user by modules, either when errors occur or to indicate how the code is proceeding. The `l3msg` module provides a consistent method for doing this (as opposed to writing directly to the terminal or log).

The system used by `l3msg` to create messages divides the process into two distinct parts. Named messages are created in the first part of the process; at this stage, no decision is made about the type of output that the message will produce. The second part of the process is actually producing a message. At this stage a choice of message *class* has to be made, for example **error**, **warning** or **info**.

By separating out the creation and use of messages, several benefits are available. First, the messages can be altered later without needing details of where they are used in the code. This makes it possible to alter the language used, the detail level and so on. Secondly, the output which results from a given message can be altered. This can be done on a message class, module or message name basis. In this way, message behaviour can be altered and messages can be entirely suppressed.

## 154 Creating new messages

All messages have to be created before they can be used. All message setting is local, with the general assumption that messages will be managed as part of module set up outside of any  $\TeX$  grouping.

The text of messages will automatically be wrapped to the length available in the console. As a result, formatting is only needed where it will help to show meaning. In particular, `\` may be used to force a new line and `\_` forces an explicit space.

---

```
\msg_new:nnnn
```

```
\msg_new:nnn
```

---

Updated: 2011-08-16

---

```
\msg_new:nnnn {<module>} {<message>} {<text>} {<more text>}
```

Creates a *<message>* for a given *<module>*. The message will be defined to first give *<text>* and then *<more text>* if the user requests it. If no *<more text>* is available then a standard text is given instead. Within *<text>* and *<more text>* four parameters (**#1** to **#4**) can be used: these will be supplied at the time the message is used. The parameters will be expanded when the message is used. Within the *<text>* and *<more text>* `\` can be used to start a new line. An error will be raised if the *<message>* already exists.

---

```
\msg_set:nnnn
```

```
\msg_set:nnn
```

```
\msg_gset:nnnn
```

```
\msg_gset:nnn
```

---

```
\msg_set:nnnn {<module>} {<message>} {<text>} {<more text>}
```

Sets up the text for a *<message>* for a given *<module>*. The message will be defined to first give *<text>* and then *<more text>* if the user requests it. If no *<more text>* is available then a standard text is given instead. Within *<text>* and *<more text>* four parameters (**#1** to **#4**) can be used: these will be supplied at the time the message is used. The parameters will be expanded when the message is used. Within the *<text>* and *<more text>* `\` can be used to start a new line.

## 155 Contextual information for messages

<hr/> <code>\msg_line_context</code> ☆ <hr/>	<code>\msg_line_context:</code> Prints the current line number when a message is given, and thus suitable for giving context to messages. The number itself is preceded by the text <code>on line</code> .
<hr/> <code>\msg_line_number</code> ☆ <hr/>	<code>\msg_line_number:</code> Prints the current line number when a message is given.
<hr/> <code>\c_msg_return_text_tl</code> <hr/>	Standard text to indicate that the user should try pressing <code>&lt;return&gt;</code> to continue. The standard definition reads:  Try typing <code>&lt;return&gt;</code> to proceed.  If that doesn't work, type <code>X &lt;return&gt;</code> to quit.
<hr/> <code>\c_msg_trouble_text_tl</code> <hr/>	Standard text to indicate that the more errors are likely and that aborting the run is advised. The standard definition reads:  More errors will almost certainly follow: the LaTeX run should be aborted.
<hr/> <code>\msg_fatal_text:n</code> ☆ <hr/>	<code>\msg_fatal_text:n {&lt;module&gt;}</code> Produces the standard text:  Fatal <code>&lt;module&gt;</code> error  This function can be redefined to alter the language in which the message is given, using <code>#1</code> as the name of the <code>&lt;module&gt;</code> to be included.
<hr/> <code>\msg_critical_text:n</code> ☆ <hr/>	<code>\msg_critical_text:n {&lt;module&gt;}</code> Produces the standard text:  Critical <code>&lt;module&gt;</code> error  This function can be redefined to alter the language in which the message is given, using <code>#1</code> as the name of the <code>&lt;module&gt;</code> to be included.
<hr/> <code>\msg_error_text:n</code> ☆ <hr/>	<code>\msg_error_text:n {&lt;module&gt;}</code> Produces the standard text:  <code>&lt;module&gt;</code> error  This function can be redefined to alter the language in which the message is given, using <code>#1</code> as the name of the <code>&lt;module&gt;</code> to be included.

---

<code>\msg_warning_text:n</code>	★	<code>\msg_warning_text:n {&lt;module&gt;}</code>
----------------------------------	---	---

---

Produces the standard text:

`<module> warning`

This function can be redefined to alter the language in which the message is give, using #1 as the name of the `<module>` to be included.

---

<code>\msg_info_text:n</code>	★	<code>\msg_info_text:n {&lt;module&gt;}</code>
-------------------------------	---	--

---

Produces the standard text:

`<module> info`

This function can be redefined to alter the language in which the message is give, using #1 as the name of the `<module>` to be included.

## 156 Issuing messages

Messages behave differently depending on the message class. A number of standard message classes are supplied, but more can be created.

When issuing messages, any arguments passed should use `\tl_to_str:n` or `\token_to_str:N` to prevent unwanted expansion of the material.

---

<code>\msg_class_set:nn</code>	<code>\msg_class_set:nn {&lt;class&gt;} {&lt;code&gt;}</code>
--------------------------------	---

---

Sets a `<class>` to output a message, using `<code>` to process the message text. The `<class>` should be a text value, while the `<code>` may be any arbitrary material. The `<code>` will receive 6 arguments: the module name (#1), the message name (#2) and the four arguments taken by the message text (#3 to #6).

The kernel defines several common message classes. The following describes the standard behaviour of each class if no redirection of the class or message is active. In all cases, the message may be issued supplying 0 to 4 arguments. The code will ensure that there an no errors if the number of arguments supplied here does not match the number in the definition of the message (although of course the sense of the message may be impaired).

---

<code>\msg_fatal:nnxxxx</code>	<code>\msg_fatal:nnxxxx {&lt;module&gt;} {&lt;message&gt;} {&lt;arg one&gt;}</code>
<code>\msg_fatal:(nnxxx nnxx nnx nn)</code>	<code>{&lt;arg two&gt;} {&lt;arg three&gt;} {&lt;arg four&gt;}</code>

---

Issues `<module>` error `<message>`, passing `<arg one>` to `<arg four>` to the text-creating functions. After issuing a fatal error the T<sub>E</sub>X run will halt.

---

<code>\msg_critical:nnxxxx</code>	<code>\msg_critical:nnxxxx {&lt;module&gt;} {&lt;message&gt;} {&lt;arg one&gt;}</code>
<code>\msg_critical:(nnxxx nnxx nnx nn)</code>	<code>{&lt;arg two&gt;} {&lt;arg three&gt;} {&lt;arg four&gt;}</code>

---

Issues `<module>` error `<message>`, passing `<arg one>` to `<arg four>` to the text-creating functions. After issuing the message reading the current input file will stop. This may halt the T<sub>E</sub>X run (if the current file is the main file) or may abort reading a sub-file.

---

```

\msg_error:nnxxxx      \msg_error:nnxxxx {<module>} {<message>} {<arg one>}
\msg_error:(nnxxx|nnxx|nnx|nn) {<arg two>} {<arg three>} {<arg four>}

```

---

Issues *<module>* error *<message>*, passing *<arg one>* to *<arg four>* to the text-creating functions. The error will stop processing and issue the text at the terminal. After user input, the run will continue.

---

```

\msg_warning:nnxxxx    \msg_warning:nnxxxx {<module>} {<message>} {<arg one>}
\msg_warning:(nnxxx|nnxx|nnx|nn) {<arg two>} {<arg three>} {<arg four>}

```

---

Issues *<module>* warning *<message>*, passing *<arg one>* to *<arg four>* to the text-creating functions. The warning text will be added to the log file, but the T<sub>E</sub>X run will not be interrupted.

---

```

\msg_info:nnxxxx       \msg_info:nnxxxx {<module>} {<message>} {<arg one>}
\msg_info:(nnxxx|nnxx|nnx|nn) {<arg two>} {<arg three>} {<arg four>}

```

---

Issues *<module>* information *<message>*, passing *<arg one>* to *<arg four>* to the text-creating functions. The information text will be added to the log file.

---

```

\msg_log:nnxxxx        \msg_log:nnxxxx {<module>} {<message>} {<arg one>}
\msg_log:(nnxxx|nnxx|nnx|nn) {<arg two>} {<arg three>} {<arg four>}

```

---

Issues *<module>* information *<message>*, passing *<arg one>* to *<arg four>* to the text-creating functions. The information text will be added to the log file: the output is briefer than `\msg_info:nnxxxx`.

---

```

\msg_none:nnxxxx       \msg_none:nnxxxx {<module>} {<message>} {<arg one>}
\msg_none:(nnxxx|nnxx|nnx|nn) {<arg two>} {<arg three>} {<arg four>}

```

---

Does nothing: used as a message class to prevent any output at all (see the discussion of message redirection).

## 157 Redirecting messages

Each message has a “name”, which can be used to alter the behaviour of the message when it is given. Thus we might have

```
\msg_new:nnnn { module } { my-message } { Some~text } { Some-more~text }
```

to define a message, with

```
\msg_error:nn { module } { my-message }
```

when it is used. With no filtering, this will raise an error. However, we could alter the behaviour with

```
\msg_redirect_class:nn { error } { warning }
```

to turn all errors into warnings, or with

```
\msg_redirect_module:nnn { module } { error } { warning }
```

to alter just those messages for module, or even

```
\msg_redirect_name:nnn { module } { my-message } { warning }
```

to target just one message.

---

```
\msg_redirect_class:nn
```

---

```
\msg_redirect_class:nn {<class one>} {<class two>}
```

Changes the behaviour of messages of *<class one>* so that they are processed using the code for those of *<class two>*. Multiple redirections are possible. Redirection to a missing class or infinite loops will raise errors when the messages are used, rather than at the point of redirection.

---

```
\msg_redirect_module:nnn
```

---

```
\msg_redirect_module:nnn {<module>} {<class one>} {<class two>}
```

Redirects message of *<class one>* for *<module>* to act as though they were from *<class two>*. Messages of *<class one>* from sources other than *<module>* are not affected by this redirection. This function can be used to make some messages “silent” by default. For example, all of the **trace** messages of *<module>* could be turned off with:

```
\msg_redirect_module:nnn { module } { trace } { none }
```

---

```
\msg_redirect_name:nnn
```

---

```
\msg_redirect_name:nn {<module>} {<message>} {<class>}
```

Redirects a specific *<message>* from a specific *<module>* to act as a member of *<class>* of messages. This function can be used to make a selected message “silent” without changing global parameters:

```
\msg_redirect_name:nnn { module } { annoying-message } { none }
```

## 158 Low-level message functions

The lower-level message functions should usually be accessed from the higher-level system. However, there are occasions where direct access to these functions is desirable.

---

```
\msg_newline
```

---

```
★ \msg_newline:
```

```
\msg_two_newlines
```

---

```
★ Forces a new line in a message. This is a low-level function, which will not include any additional printing information in the message: contrast with \\ in messages. The two version adds two lines.
```

---

`\msg_interrupt:xxx` `\msg_interrupt:xxx {<first line>} {<text>} {<extra text>}`  
 Interrupts the T<sub>E</sub>X run, issuing a formatted message comprising *<first line>* and *<text>* laid out in the format

```

!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!
!
! <first line>
!
! <text>
!.....

```

where the *<text>* will be wrapped to fit within the current line length. The user may then request more information, at which stage the *<extra text>* will be shown in the terminal in the format

```

|,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,
|  <extra text>
|.....

```

where the *<extra text>* will be wrapped to fit within the current line length.

---

`\msg_log:x` `\msg_log:x {<text>}`  
 Writes to the log file with the *<text>* laid out in the format

```

.....
. <text>
.....

```

where the *<text>* will be wrapped to fit within the current line length.

---

`\msg_term:x` `\msg_term:x {<text>}`  
 Writes to the terminal and log file with the *<text>* laid out in the format

```

*****
* <text>
*****

```

where the *<text>* will be wrapped to fit within the current line length.

## 159 Kernel-specific functions

Messages from L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X3 itself are handled by the general message system, but have their own functions. This allows some text to be pre-defined, and also ensures that serious errors can be handled properly.



<hr/> <code>\msg_kernel_new:nnnn</code> <code>\msg_kernel_new:nnn</code> <hr/> Updated: 2011-08-16	<code>\msg_kernel_new:nnnn {&lt;module&gt;} {&lt;message&gt;} {&lt;text&gt;} {&lt;more text&gt;}</code> <p>Creates a kernel <code>&lt;message&gt;</code> for a given <code>&lt;module&gt;</code>. The message will be defined to first give <code>&lt;text&gt;</code> and then <code>&lt;more text&gt;</code> if the user requests it. If no <code>&lt;more text&gt;</code> is available then a standard text is given instead. Within <code>&lt;text&gt;</code> and <code>&lt;more text&gt;</code> four parameters (<code>#1</code> to <code>#4</code>) can be used: these will be supplied at the time the message is used. The parameters will be expanded when the message is used. Within the <code>&lt;text&gt;</code> and <code>&lt;more text&gt;</code> <code>\</code> can be used to start a new line. An error will be raised if the <code>&lt;message&gt;</code> already exists.</p>
<hr/> <code>\msg_kernel_set:nnnn</code> <code>\msg_kernel_set:nnn</code> <hr/>	<code>\msg_kernel_set:nnnn {&lt;module&gt;} {&lt;message&gt;} {&lt;text&gt;} {&lt;more text&gt;}</code> <p>Sets up the text for a kernel <code>&lt;message&gt;</code> for a given <code>&lt;module&gt;</code>. The message will be defined to first give <code>&lt;text&gt;</code> and then <code>&lt;more text&gt;</code> if the user requests it. If no <code>&lt;more text&gt;</code> is available then a standard text is given instead. Within <code>&lt;text&gt;</code> and <code>&lt;more text&gt;</code> four parameters (<code>#1</code> to <code>#4</code>) can be used: these will be supplied at the time the message is used. The parameters will be expanded when the message is used. Within the <code>&lt;text&gt;</code> and <code>&lt;more text&gt;</code> <code>\</code> can be used to start a new line.</p>
<hr/> <code>\msg_kernel_fatal:nnxxxx</code> <code>\msg_kernel_fatal:(nnxxx nnxx nnx nn)</code> <hr/>	<code>\msg_kernel_fatal:nnxxxx {&lt;module&gt;} {&lt;message&gt;} {&lt;arg one&gt;} {&lt;arg two&gt;} {&lt;arg three&gt;} {&lt;arg four&gt;}</code> <p>Issues kernel <code>&lt;module&gt;</code> error <code>&lt;message&gt;</code>, passing <code>&lt;arg one&gt;</code> to <code>&lt;arg four&gt;</code> to the text-creating functions. After issuing a fatal error the T<sub>E</sub>X run will halt. Cannot be redirected.</p>
<hr/> <code>\msg_kernel_error:nnxxxx</code> <code>\msg_kernel_error:(nnxxx nnxx nnx nn)</code> <hr/>	<code>\msg_kernel_error:nnxxxx {&lt;module&gt;} {&lt;message&gt;} {&lt;arg one&gt;} {&lt;arg two&gt;} {&lt;arg three&gt;} {&lt;arg four&gt;}</code> <p>Issues kernel <code>&lt;module&gt;</code> error <code>&lt;message&gt;</code>, passing <code>&lt;arg one&gt;</code> to <code>&lt;arg four&gt;</code> to the text-creating functions. The error will stop processing and issue the text at the terminal. After user input, the run will continue. Cannot be redirected.</p>
<hr/> <code>\msg_kernel_warning:nnxxxx</code> <code>\msg_kernel_warning:(nnxxx nnxx nnx nn)</code> <hr/>	<code>\msg_kernel_warning:nnxxxx {&lt;module&gt;} {&lt;message&gt;} {&lt;arg one&gt;} {&lt;arg two&gt;} {&lt;arg three&gt;} {&lt;arg four&gt;}</code> <p>Issues kernel <code>&lt;module&gt;</code> warning <code>&lt;message&gt;</code>, passing <code>&lt;arg one&gt;</code> to <code>&lt;arg four&gt;</code> to the text-creating functions. The warning text will be added to the log file, but the T<sub>E</sub>X run will not be interrupted.</p>
<hr/> <code>\msg_kernel_info:nnxxxx</code> <code>\msg_kernel_info:(nnxxx nnxx nnx nn)</code> <hr/>	<code>\msg_kernel_info:nnxxxx {&lt;module&gt;} {&lt;message&gt;} {&lt;arg one&gt;} {&lt;arg two&gt;} {&lt;arg three&gt;} {&lt;arg four&gt;}</code> <p>Issues kernel <code>&lt;module&gt;</code> information <code>&lt;message&gt;</code>, passing <code>&lt;arg one&gt;</code> to <code>&lt;arg four&gt;</code> to the text-creating functions. The information text will be added to the log file.</p>

## 160 Expandable errors

In a few places, the L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X3 kernel needs to produce errors in an expansion only context. This must be handled internally very differently from normal error messages, as none of

the tools to print to the terminal or the log file are expandable. However, the interface is similar.

<hr/>	
<code>\msg_expandable_kernel_error:nnnnnn</code>	★ <code>\msg_expandable_kernel_error:nnnnnn {&lt;module&gt;}</code>
<code>\msg_expandable_kernel_error:(nnnnnn nnnn nnn nn)</code>	★ <code>{&lt;message&gt;}</code>
	<code>{&lt;arg one&gt;} {&lt;arg two&gt;} {&lt;arg three&gt;} {&lt;arg four&gt;}</code>
<hr/>	
	New: 2011-11-23
<hr/>	

Issues an error, passing *<arg one>* to *<arg four>* to the text-creating functions. The resulting string must be shorter than a line, otherwise it will be cropped.

<hr/>	
<code>\msg_expandable_error:n</code>	★ <code>\msg_expandable_error:n {&lt;error message&gt;}</code>
New: 2011-08-11	Issues an “Undefined error” message from T <sub>E</sub> X itself, and prints the <i>&lt;error message&gt;</i> .
Updated: 2011-08-13	The <i>&lt;error message&gt;</i> must be short: it is cropped at the end of one line.
<hr/>	

**T<sub>E</sub>Xhackers note:** This function expands to an empty token list after two steps. Tokens inserted in response to T<sub>E</sub>X’s prompt are read with the current category code setting, and inserted just after the place where the error message was issued.

## 161 Internal l3msg functions

The following functions are used in several kernel modules.

<hr/>	
<code>\msg_aux_use:nn</code>	<code>\msg_aux_use:nnxx {&lt;module&gt;} {&lt;message&gt;}</code>
<code>\msg_aux_use:nnxxx</code>	<code>{&lt;arg one&gt;} {&lt;arg two&gt;} {&lt;arg three&gt;} {&lt;arg four&gt;}</code>
<hr/>	

Prints the *<message>* from *<module>* in the terminal, without formatting.

<hr/>	
<code>\msg_aux_show:x</code>	<code>\msg_aux_show:x {&lt;formatted string&gt;}</code>
<hr/>	

Shows the *<formatted string>* on the terminal. The *<formatted string>* must start with `^^J>`, failure to do so causes low-level T<sub>E</sub>X errors.

<hr/>	
<code>\msg_aux_show:Nnx</code>	<code>\msg_aux_show:Nnx &lt;variable&gt; {&lt;module&gt;} {&lt;token list&gt;}</code>
<hr/>	

Auxiliary common to l3clist, l3prop and seq, which displays an appropriate message and the contents of the variable.

## Part XX

# The l3keys package

## Key–value interfaces

The key–value method is a popular system for creating large numbers of settings for controlling function or package behaviour. For the user, the system normally results in input of the form

```
\PackageControlMacro{
  key-one = value one,
  key-two = value two
}
```

or

```
\PackageMacro[
  key-one = value one,
  key-two = value two
]{argument}.
```

The high level functions here are intended as a method to create key–value controls. Keys are themselves created using a key–value interface, minimising the number of functions and arguments required. Each key is created by setting one or more *properties* of the key:

```
\keys_define:nn { module }
{
  key-one .code:n    = code including parameter #1,
  key-two .tl_set:N = \l_module_store_tl
}
```

These values can then be set as with other key–value approaches:

```
\keys_set:nn { module }
{
  key-one = value one,
  key-two = value two
}
```

At a document level, `\keys_set:nn` will be used within a document function, for example

```
\DeclareDocumentCommand \SomePackageSetup { m }
{ \keys_set:nn { module } { #1 } }
\DeclareDocumentCommand \SomePackageMacro { o m }
{
  \group_begin:
```

```

\keys_set:nn { module } { #1 }
% Main code for \SomePackageMacro
\group_end:
}

```

Key names may contain any tokens, as they are handled internally using `\tl_to_str:n`. As will be discussed in section 163, it is suggested that the character `/` is reserved for sub-division of keys into logical groups. Functions and variables are *not* expanded when creating key names, and so

```

\tl_set:Nn \l_module_tmp_tl { key }
\keys_define:nn { module }
{
  \l_module_tmp_tl .code:n = code
}

```

will create a key called `\l_module_tmp_tl`, and not one called `key`.

## 162 Creating keys

---

```
\keys_define:nn {<module>} {<keyval list>}
```

---

Parses the *<keyval list>* and defines the keys listed there for *<module>*. The *<module>* name should be a text value, but there are no restrictions on the nature of the text. In practice the *<module>* should be chosen to be unique to the module in question (unless deliberately adding keys to an existing module).

The *<keyval list>* should consist of one or more key names along with an associated key *property*. The properties of a key determine how it acts. The individual properties are described in the following text; a typical use of `\keys_define:nn` might read

```

\keys_define:nn { mymodule }
{
  keyname .code:n = Some~code~using~#1,
  keyname .value_required:
}

```

where the properties of the key begin from the `.` after the key name.

The various properties available take either no arguments at all, or require exactly one argument. This is indicated in the name of the property using an argument specification. In the following discussion, each property is illustrated attached to an arbitrary *<key>*, which when used may be supplied with a *<value>*. All key *definitions* are local.

---

```
.bool_set:N <key> .bool_set:N = <boolean>
```

---

Defines *<key>* to set *<boolean>* to *<value>* (which must be either `true` or `false`). If the variable does not exist, it will be created at the point that the key is set up. The *<boolean>* will be assigned locally.

<hr/> <b>.bool_gset:N</b> <hr/>	<p><math>\langle key \rangle</math> .bool_gset:N = <math>\langle boolean \rangle</math></p> <p>Defines <math>\langle key \rangle</math> to set <math>\langle boolean \rangle</math> to <math>\langle value \rangle</math> (which must be either <b>true</b> or <b>false</b>). If the variable does not exist, it will be created at the point that the key is set up. The <math>\langle boolean \rangle</math> will be assigned globally.</p>
<hr/> <b>.bool_set_inverse:N</b> <hr/> <hr/> New: 2011-08-28 <hr/>	<p><math>\langle key \rangle</math> .bool_set_inverse:N = <math>\langle boolean \rangle</math></p> <p>Defines <math>\langle key \rangle</math> to set <math>\langle boolean \rangle</math> to the logical inverse of <math>\langle value \rangle</math> (which must be either <b>true</b> or <b>false</b>). If the <math>\langle boolean \rangle</math> does not exist, it will be created at the point that the key is set up. The <math>\langle boolean \rangle</math> will be assigned locally.</p> <p><b>This property is experimental.</b></p>
<hr/> <b>.bool_gset_inverse:N</b> <hr/>	<p><math>\langle key \rangle</math> .bool_gset_inverse:N = <math>\langle boolean \rangle</math></p> <p>Defines <math>\langle key \rangle</math> to set <math>\langle boolean \rangle</math> to the logical inverse of <math>\langle value \rangle</math> (which must be either <b>true</b> or <b>false</b>). If the <math>\langle boolean \rangle</math> does not exist, it will be created at the point that the key is set up. The <math>\langle boolean \rangle</math> will be assigned globally.</p> <p><b>This property is experimental.</b></p>
<hr/> <b>.choice:</b> <hr/>	<p><math>\langle key \rangle</math> .choice:</p> <p>Sets <math>\langle key \rangle</math> to act as a choice key. Each valid choice for <math>\langle key \rangle</math> must then be created, as discussed in section <a href="#">164</a>.</p>
<hr/> <b>.choices:nn</b> <hr/> <hr/> New: 2011-08-21 <hr/>	<p><math>\langle key \rangle</math> .choices:nn <math>\langle choices \rangle</math> <math>\langle code \rangle</math></p> <p>Sets <math>\langle key \rangle</math> to act as a choice key, and defines a series <math>\langle choices \rangle</math> which are implemented using the <math>\langle code \rangle</math>. Inside <math>\langle code \rangle</math>, <math>\backslash l\_keys\_choice\_tl</math> will be the name of the choice made, and <math>\backslash l\_keys\_choice\_int</math> will be the position of the choice in the list of <math>\langle choices \rangle</math> (indexed from 0). Choices are discussed in detail in section <a href="#">164</a>.</p> <p><b>This property is experimental.</b></p>
<hr/> <b>.choice_code:n</b> <hr/> <hr/> <b>.choice_code:x</b> <hr/>	<p><math>\langle key \rangle</math> .choice_code:n = <math>\langle code \rangle</math></p> <p>Stores <math>\langle code \rangle</math> for use when <b>.generate_choices:n</b> creates one or more choice sub-keys of the current key. Inside <math>\langle code \rangle</math>, <math>\backslash l\_keys\_choice\_tl</math> will expand to the name of the choice made, and <math>\backslash l\_keys\_choice\_int</math> will be the position of the choice in the list given to <b>.generate_choices:n</b>. Choices are discussed in detail in section <a href="#">164</a>.</p>
<hr/> <b>.clist_set:N</b> <hr/> <hr/> <b>.clist_set:c</b> <hr/> <hr/> New: 2011/09/11 <hr/>	<p><math>\langle key \rangle</math> .clist_set:N = <math>\langle comma\ list\ variable \rangle</math></p> <p>Defines <math>\langle key \rangle</math> to locally set <math>\langle comma\ list\ variable \rangle</math> to <math>\langle value \rangle</math>. Spaces around commas and empty items will be stripped. If the variable does not exist, it will be created at the point that the key is set up.</p>
<hr/> <b>.clist_gset:N</b> <hr/> <hr/> <b>.clist_gset:c</b> <hr/> <hr/> New: 2011/09/11 <hr/>	<p><math>\langle key \rangle</math> .clist_gset:N = <math>\langle comma\ list\ variable \rangle</math></p> <p>Defines <math>\langle key \rangle</math> to globally set <math>\langle comma\ list\ variable \rangle</math> to <math>\langle value \rangle</math>. Spaces around commas and empty items will be stripped. If the variable does not exist, it will be created at the point that the key is set up.</p>

<u>.code:n</u> <u>.code:x</u>	<p><math>\langle key \rangle</math> .code:n = <math>\langle code \rangle</math></p> <p>Stores the <math>\langle code \rangle</math> for execution when <math>\langle key \rangle</math> is used. The <math>\langle code \rangle</math> can include one parameter (#1), which will be the <math>\langle value \rangle</math> given for the <math>\langle key \rangle</math>. The x-type variant will expand <math>\langle code \rangle</math> at the point where the <math>\langle key \rangle</math> is created.</p>
<u>.default:n</u> <u>.default:v</u>	<p><math>\langle key \rangle</math> .default:n = <math>\langle default \rangle</math></p> <p>Creates a <math>\langle default \rangle</math> value for <math>\langle key \rangle</math>, which is used if no value is given. This will be used if only the key name is given, but not if a blank <math>\langle value \rangle</math> is given:</p> <pre> \keys_define:nn { module } {   key .code:n      = Hello~#1,   key .default:n = World } \keys_set:nn { module } {   key = Fred, % Prints 'Hello Fred'   key,      % Prints 'Hello World'   key = ,    % Prints 'Hello ' } </pre>
<u>.dim_set:N</u> <u>.dim_set:c</u>	<p><math>\langle key \rangle</math> .dim_set:N = <math>\langle dimension \rangle</math></p> <p>Defines <math>\langle key \rangle</math> to set <math>\langle dimension \rangle</math> to <math>\langle value \rangle</math> (which must a dimension expression). If the variable does not exist, it will be created at the point that the key is set up. The <math>\langle dimension \rangle</math> will be assigned locally.</p>
<u>.dim_gset:N</u> <u>.dim_gset:c</u>	<p><math>\langle key \rangle</math> .dim_gset:N = <math>\langle dimension \rangle</math></p> <p>Defines <math>\langle key \rangle</math> to set <math>\langle dimension \rangle</math> to <math>\langle value \rangle</math> (which must a dimension expression). If the variable does not exist, it will be created at the point that the key is set up. The <math>\langle dimension \rangle</math> will be assigned globally.</p>
<u>.fp_set:N</u> <u>.fp_set:c</u>	<p><math>\langle key \rangle</math> .fp_set:N = <math>\langle floating point \rangle</math></p> <p>Defines <math>\langle key \rangle</math> to set <math>\langle floating point \rangle</math> to <math>\langle value \rangle</math> (which must a floating point number). If the variable does not exist, it will be created at the point that the key is set up. The <math>\langle integer \rangle</math> will be assigned locally.</p>
<u>.fp_gset:N</u> <u>.fp_gset:c</u>	<p><math>\langle key \rangle</math> .fp_gset:N = <math>\langle floating point \rangle</math></p> <p>Defines <math>\langle key \rangle</math> to set <math>\langle floating-point \rangle</math> to <math>\langle value \rangle</math> (which must a floating point number). If the variable does not exist, it will be created at the point that the key is set up. The <math>\langle integer \rangle</math> will be assigned globally.</p>

<hr/> <b>.generate_choices:n</b> <hr/>	$\langle key \rangle$ .generate_choices:n = { $\langle list \rangle$ }	This property will mark $\langle key \rangle$ as a multiple choice key, and will use the $\langle list \rangle$ to define the choices. The $\langle list \rangle$ should consist of a comma-separated list of choice names. Each choice will be set up to execute $\langle code \rangle$ as set using .choice_code:n (or .choice_code:x). Choices are discussed in detail in section 164.
<hr/> <b>.int_set:N</b> <hr/> <b>.int_set:c</b> <hr/>	$\langle key \rangle$ .int_set:N = $\langle integer \rangle$	Defines $\langle key \rangle$ to set $\langle integer \rangle$ to $\langle value \rangle$ (which must be an integer expression). If the variable does not exist, it will be created at the point that the key is set up. The $\langle integer \rangle$ will be assigned locally.
<hr/> <b>.int_gset:N</b> <hr/> <b>.int_gset:c</b> <hr/>	$\langle key \rangle$ .int_gset:N = $\langle integer \rangle$	Defines $\langle key \rangle$ to set $\langle integer \rangle$ to $\langle value \rangle$ (which must be an integer expression). If the variable does not exist, it will be created at the point that the key is set up. The $\langle integer \rangle$ will be assigned globally.
<hr/> <b>.meta:n</b> <hr/> <b>.meta:x</b> <hr/>	$\langle key \rangle$ .meta:n = { $\langle keyval list \rangle$ }	Makes $\langle key \rangle$ a meta-key, which will set $\langle keyval list \rangle$ in one go. If $\langle key \rangle$ is given with a value at the time the key is used, then the value will be passed through to the subsidiary $\langle keys \rangle$ for processing (as #1).
<hr/> <b>.multichoice:</b> <hr/> <small>New: 2011-08-21</small> <hr/>	$\langle key \rangle$ .multichoice:	Sets $\langle key \rangle$ to act as a multiple choice key. Each valid choice for $\langle key \rangle$ must then be created, as discussed in section 164. <b>This property is experimental.</b>
<hr/> <b>.multichoice:nn</b> <hr/> <small>New: 2011-08-21</small> <hr/>	$\langle key \rangle$ .multichoice:nn $\langle choices \rangle$ $\langle code \rangle$	Sets $\langle key \rangle$ to act as a multiple choice key, and defines a series $\langle choices \rangle$ which are implemented using the $\langle code \rangle$ . Inside $\langle code \rangle$ , \l_keys_choice_tl will be the name of the choice made, and \l_keys_choice_int will be the position of the choice in the list of $\langle choices \rangle$ (indexed from 0). Choices are discussed in detail in section 164. <b>This property is experimental.</b>
<hr/> <b>.skip_set:N</b> <hr/> <b>.skip_set:c</b> <hr/>	$\langle key \rangle$ .skip_set:N = $\langle skip \rangle$	Defines $\langle key \rangle$ to set $\langle skip \rangle$ to $\langle value \rangle$ (which must be a skip expression). If the variable does not exist, it will be created at the point that the key is set up. The $\langle skip \rangle$ will be assigned locally.
<hr/> <b>.skip_gset:N</b> <hr/> <b>.skip_gset:c</b> <hr/>	$\langle key \rangle$ .skip_gset:N = $\langle skip \rangle$	Defines $\langle key \rangle$ to set $\langle skip \rangle$ to $\langle value \rangle$ (which must be a skip expression). If the variable does not exist, it will be created at the point that the key is set up. The $\langle skip \rangle$ will be assigned globally.

<hr/> <code>.tl_set:N</code> <hr/>	<code>&lt;key&gt; .tl_set:N = &lt;token list variable&gt;</code>
<code>.tl_set:c</code>	Defines <code>&lt;key&gt;</code> to set <code>&lt;token list variable&gt;</code> to <code>&lt;value&gt;</code> . If the variable does not exist, it will be created at the point that the key is set up. The <code>&lt;token list variable&gt;</code> will be assigned locally.
<hr/> <code>.tl_gset:N</code> <hr/>	<code>&lt;key&gt; .tl_gset:N = &lt;token list variable&gt;</code>
<code>.tl_gset:c</code>	Defines <code>&lt;key&gt;</code> to set <code>&lt;token list variable&gt;</code> to <code>&lt;value&gt;</code> . If the variable does not exist, it will be created at the point that the key is set up. The <code>&lt;token list variable&gt;</code> will be assigned globally.
<hr/> <code>.tl_set_x:N</code> <hr/>	<code>&lt;key&gt; .tl_set_x:N = &lt;token list variable&gt;</code>
<code>.tl_set_x:c</code>	Defines <code>&lt;key&gt;</code> to set <code>&lt;token list variable&gt;</code> to <code>&lt;value&gt;</code> , which will be subjected to an x-type expansion ( <i>i.e.</i> using <code>\tl_set:Nx</code> ). If the variable does not exist, it will be created at the point that the key is set up. The <code>&lt;token list variable&gt;</code> will be assigned locally.
<hr/> <code>.tl_gset_x:N</code> <hr/>	<code>&lt;key&gt; .tl_gset_x:N = &lt;token list variable&gt;</code>
<code>.tl_gset_x:c</code>	Defines <code>&lt;key&gt;</code> to set <code>&lt;token list variable&gt;</code> to <code>&lt;value&gt;</code> , which will be subjected to an x-type expansion ( <i>i.e.</i> using <code>\tl_set:Nx</code> ). If the variable does not exist, it will be created at the point that the key is set up. The <code>&lt;token list variable&gt;</code> will be assigned globally.
<hr/> <code>.value_forbidden:</code> <hr/>	<code>&lt;key&gt; .value_forbidden:</code>
	Specifies that <code>&lt;key&gt;</code> cannot receive a <code>&lt;value&gt;</code> when used. If a <code>&lt;value&gt;</code> is given then an error will be issued.
<hr/> <code>.value_required:</code> <hr/>	<code>&lt;key&gt; .value_required:</code>
	Specifies that <code>&lt;key&gt;</code> must receive a <code>&lt;value&gt;</code> when used. If a <code>&lt;value&gt;</code> is not given then an error will be issued.

## 163 Sub-dividing keys

When creating large numbers of keys, it may be desirable to divide them into several sub-groups for a given module. This can be achieved either by adding a sub-division to the module name:

```
\keys_define:nn { module / subgroup }
{ key .code:n = code }
```

or to the key name:

```
\keys_define:nn { module }
{ subgroup / key .code:n = code }
```

As illustrated, the best choice of token for sub-dividing keys in this way is `/`. This is because of the method that is used to represent keys internally. Both of the above code fragments set the same key, which has full name `module/subgroup/key`.

As will be illustrated in the next section, this subdivision is particularly relevant to making multiple choices.



## 164 Choice and multiple choice keys

The `l3keys` system supports two types of choice key, in which a series of pre-defined input values are linked to varying implementations. Choice keys are usually created so that the various values are mutually-exclusive: only one can apply at any one time. “Multiple” choice keys are also supported: these allow a selection of values to be chosen at the same time.

Mutually-exclusive choices are created by setting the `.choice:` property:

```
\keys_define:nn { module }
{ key .choice: }
```

For keys which are set up as choices, the valid choices are generated by creating sub-keys of the choice key. This can be carried out in two ways.

In many cases, choices execute similar code which is dependant only on the name of the choice or the position of the choice in the list of choices. Here, the keys can share the same code, and can be rapidly created using the `.choice_code:n` and `.generate_choices:n` properties:

```
\keys_define:nn { module }
{
  key .choice_code:n =
  {
    You~gave~choice~'\int_use:N \l_keys_choice_tl',~
    which~is~in~position~
    \int_use:N \l_keys_choice_int \c_space_tl
    in~the~list.
  },
  key .generate_choices:n =
  { choice-a, choice-b, choice-c }
}
```

Following common computing practice, `\l_keys_choice_int` is indexed from 0 (as an offset), so that the value of `\l_keys_choice_int` for the first choice in a list will be zero.

The same approach is also implemented by the *experimental* property `.choices:nn`. This combines the functionality of `.choice_code:n` and `.generate_choices:n` into one property:

```
\keys_define:nn { module }
{
  key .choices:nn =
  { choice-a, choice-b, choice-c }
  {
    You~gave~choice~'\int_use:N \l_keys_choice_tl',~
    which~is~in~position~
    \int_use:N \l_keys_choice_int \c_space_tl
    in~the~list.
  }
}
```

Note that the `.choices:nn` property should *not* be mixed with use of `.generate_choices:n`.

---

`\l_keys_choice_int`  
`\l_keys_choice_tl`

---

Inside the code block for a choice generated using `.generate_choice:` or `.choices:nn`, the variables `\l_keys_choice_tl` and `\l_keys_choice_int` are available to indicate the name of the current choice, and its position in the comma list. The position is indexed from 0.

On the other hand, it is sometimes useful to create choices which use entirely different code from one another. This can be achieved by setting the `.choice:` property of a key, then manually defining sub-keys.

```
\keys_define:nn { module }
{
  key .choice:,
  key / choice-a .code:n = code-a,
  key / choice-b .code:n = code-b,
  key / choice-c .code:n = code-c,
}
```

It is possible to mix the two methods, but manually-created choices should *not* use `\l_keys_choice_tl` or `\l_keys_choice_int`. These variables do not have defined behaviour when used outside of code created using `.generate_choices:n` (*i.e.* anything might happen).

Multiple choices are created in a very similar manner to mutually-exclusive choices, using the properties `.multichoice:` and `.multichoices:nn`. As with mutually exclusive choices, multiple choices are define as sub-keys. Thus both

```
\keys_define:nn { module }
{
  key .multichoices:nn =
    { choice-a, choice-b, choice-c }
    {
      You~gave~choice~'\int_use:N \l_keys_choice_tl',~
      which~is~in~position~
      \int_use:N \l_keys_choice_int \c_space_tl
      in~the~list.
    }
}
```

and

```
\keys_define:nn { module }
{
  key .multichoice:,
  key / choice-a .code:n = code-a,
  key / choice-b .code:n = code-b,
  key / choice-c .code:n = code-c,
}
```

are valid. The `.multichoices:nn` property causes `\l_keys_choice_tl` and `\l_keys_choice_int` to be set in exactly the same way as described for `.choices:nn`.

When multiple choice keys are set, the value is treated as a comma-separated list:

```
\keys_set:nn { module }
{
  key = { a , b , c } % 'key' defined as a multiple choice
}
```

Each choice will be applied in turn, with the usual handling of unknown values.

## 165 Setting keys

---

`\keys_set:nn`  
`\keys_set:(nV|nv|no)`

---

`\keys_set:nn {<module>} {<keyval list>}`

Parses the `<keyval list>`, and sets those keys which are defined for `<module>`. The behaviour on finding an unknown key can be set by defining a special `unknown` key: this will be illustrated later.

If a key is not known, `\keys_set:nn` will look for a special `unknown` key for the same module. This mechanism can be used to create new keys from user input.

```
\keys_define:nn { module }
{
  unknown .code:n =
    You~tried~to~set~key~'\l_keys_key_tl'~to~'#1'.
}
```

---

`\l_keys_key_tl`

---

When processing an unknown key, the name of the key is available as `\l_keys_key_tl`. Note that this will have been processed using `\tl_to_str:n`.

---

`\l_keys_path_tl`

---

When processing an unknown key, the path of the key used is available as `\l_keys_path_tl`. Note that this will have been processed using `\tl_to_str:n`.

---

`\l_keys_value_tl`

---

When processing an unknown key, the value of the key is available as `\l_keys_value_tl`. Note that this will be empty if no value was given for the key.

## 166 Setting known keys only

The functionality described in this section is experimental and may be altered or removed, depending on feedback.

---

<code>\keys_set_known:nnN</code>	<code>\keys_set_known:nn {&lt;module&gt;} {&lt;keyval list&gt;} &lt;clist&gt;</code>
<code>\keys_set_known:(nVN nvN noN)</code>	

---

New: 2011-08-23

---

Parses the *<keyval list>*, and sets those keys which are defined for *<module>*. Any keys which are unknown are not processed further by the parser. The key–value pairs for each *unknown* key name will be stored in the *<clist>*.

## 167 Utility functions for keys

---

<code>\keys_if_exist_p:nn *</code>	<code>\keys_if_exist_p:nn &lt;module&gt; &lt;key&gt;</code>
<code>\keys_if_exist:nnTF *</code>	<code>\keys_if_exist:nnTF &lt;module&gt; &lt;key&gt; {&lt;true code&gt;} {&lt;false code&gt;}</code>

---

Tests if the *<key>* exists for *<module>*, *i.e.* if any code has been defined for *<key>*.

---

<code>\keys_if_choice_exist_p:nn *</code>	<code>\keys_if_exist_p:nnn &lt;module&gt; &lt;key&gt; &lt;choice&gt;</code>
<code>\keys_if_choice_exist:nnTF *</code>	<code>\keys_if_exist:nnnTF &lt;module&gt; &lt;key&gt; &lt;choice&gt; {&lt;true code&gt;} {&lt;false code&gt;}</code>

---

New: 2011-08-21

---

Tests if the *<choice>* is defined for the *<key>* within the *<module>*, *i.e.* if any code has been defined for *<key>/<choice>*. The test is **false** if the *<key>* itself is not defined.

---

<code>\keys_show:nn</code>	<code>\keys_show:nn {&lt;module&gt;} {&lt;key&gt;}</code>
----------------------------	---

---

Shows the function which is used to actually implement a *<key>* for a *<module>*.

## 168 Low-level interface for parsing key–val lists

To re-cap from earlier, a key–value list is input of the form

```
KeyOne = ValueOne ,
KeyTwo = ValueTwo ,
KeyThree
```

where each key–value pair is separated by a comma from the rest of the list, and each key–value pair does not necessarily contain an equals sign or a value! Processing this type of input correctly requires a number of careful steps, to correctly account for braces, spaces and the category codes of separators.

While the functions described earlier are used as a high-level interface for processing such input, in especial circumstances you may wish to use a lower-level approach. The low-level parsing system converts a *<key–value list>* into *<keys>* and associated *<values>*. After the parsing phase is completed, the resulting keys and values (or keys alone) are available for further processing. This processing is not carried out by the low-level parser itself, and so the parser requires the names of two functions along with the key–value list. One function is needed to process key–value pairs (*i.e.* two arguments), and a second function if required for keys given without arguments (*i.e.* a single argument).

The parser does not double # tokens or expand any input. The tokens = and , are corrected so that the parser does not “miss” any due to category code changes. Spaces are removed from the ends of the keys and values. Values which are given in braces will have exactly one set removed, thus

```
key = {value here},
```

and

```
key = value here,
```

are treated identically.

---

`\keyval_parse:NNn`

---

Updated: 2011-09-08

---

`\keyval_parse:NNn`  $\langle function1 \rangle$   $\langle function2 \rangle$   $\{ \langle key-value list \rangle \}$

Parses the  $\langle key-value list \rangle$  into a series of  $\langle keys \rangle$  and associated  $\langle values \rangle$ , or keys alone (if no  $\langle value \rangle$  was given).  $\langle function1 \rangle$  should take one argument, while  $\langle function2 \rangle$  should absorb two arguments. After `\keyval_parse:NNn` has parsed the  $\langle key-value list \rangle$ ,  $\langle function1 \rangle$  will be used to process keys given with no value and  $\langle function2 \rangle$  will be used to process keys given with a value. The order of the  $\langle keys \rangle$  in the  $\langle key-value list \rangle$  will be preserved. Thus

```
\keyval_parse:NNn \function:n \function:nn
{ key1 = value1 , key2 = value2, key3 = , key4 }
```

will be converted into an input stream

```
\function:nn { key1 } { value1 }
\function:nn { key2 } { value2 }
\function:nn { key3 } { }
\function:n { key4 }
```

Note that there is a difference between an empty value (an equals sign followed by nothing) and a missing value (no equals sign at all). Spaces are trimmed from the ends of the  $\langle key \rangle$  and  $\langle value \rangle$ , and any *outer* set of braces are removed from the  $\langle value \rangle$  as part of the processing.

## Part XXI

# The l3file package

## File operations

In contrast to the l3io module, which deals with the lowest level of file management, the l3file module provides a higher level interface for handling file contents. This involves providing convenient wrappers around many of the functions in l3io to make them more generally accessible.

It is important to remember that T<sub>E</sub>X will attempt to locate files using both the operating system path and entries in the T<sub>E</sub>X file database (most T<sub>E</sub>X systems use such a database). Thus the “current path” for T<sub>E</sub>X is somewhat broader than that for other programs.

### 169 File operation functions

---

`\g_file_current_name_tl`

---

Contains the name of the current L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X file. This variable should not be modified: it is intended for information only. It will be equal to `\c_job_name_tl` at the start of a L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X run and will be modified each time a file is read using `\file_input:n`.

---

`\file_if_exist:nTF`

---

`\file_if_exist:nTF {<file name>} {<true code>} {<false code>}`

---

Updated: 2012-01-25

---

Searches for `<file name>` using the current T<sub>E</sub>X search path and the additional paths controlled by `\file_path_include:n`.

**T<sub>E</sub>Xhackers note:** The `<file name>` may contain both literal items and expandable content, which should on full expansion be the desired file name. The expansion occurs when T<sub>E</sub>X searches for the file.

---

`\file_add_path:nN`

---

`\file_add_path:nN {<file name>} <tl var>`

---

Updated: 2012-01-25

---

Searches for `<file name>` in the path as detailed for `\file_if_exist:nTF`, and if found sets the `<tl var>` the fully-qualified name of the file, *i.e.* the path and file name. If the file is not found then the `<tl var>` will be empty.

**T<sub>E</sub>Xhackers note:** The `<file name>` may contain both literal items and expandable content, which should on full expansion be the desired file name. Any active characters (as declared in `\l_char_active_seq`) will *not* be expanded, allowing the direct use of these in file names.

---

<code>\file_input:n</code>	<code>\file_input:n {&lt;file name&gt;}</code>
----------------------------	--

---

Updated: 2012-01-25	Searches for $\langle file\ name \rangle$ in the path as detailed for <code>\file_if_exist:nTF</code> , and if found reads in the file as additional L <sup>A</sup> T <sub>E</sub> X source. All files read are recorded for information and the file name stack is updated by this function.
---------------------	---

---

**T<sub>E</sub>Xhackers note:** The  $\langle file\ name \rangle$  may contain both literal items and expandable content, which should on full expansion be the desired file name. Any active characters (as declared in `\l_char_active_seq`) will *not* be expanded, allowing the direct use of these in file names.

---

<code>\file_split_path_name_ext:nNNN</code>	<code>\file_split_path_name_ext:nNNN {&lt;name&gt;} &lt;path&gt; &lt;filename&gt; &lt;ext&gt;</code>
---	--

---

New: 2012-01-25

Splits the file  $\langle name \rangle$  into any  $\langle path \rangle$  (up to the last /), any  $\langle ext \rangle$  (from the last . to the end of the  $\langle name \rangle$ ), and the  $\langle filename \rangle$  (the rest of the  $\langle name \rangle$ ). Thus for example

`\file_split_path_name_ext:nNNN { figures / example.foo.eps }`

will result in  $\langle path \rangle$  `figures/`,  $\langle filename \rangle$  `example.foo` and  $\langle ext \rangle$  `eps`. The three parts of the  $\langle name \rangle$  will be stored in the token list variables given as the  $\langle name \rangle$ ,  $\langle path \rangle$  and  $\langle filename \rangle$  arguments.

**T<sub>E</sub>Xhackers note:** The  $\langle name \rangle$  may contain both literal items and expandable content, which should on full expansion be the desired file name. Any active characters (as declared in `\l_char_active_seq`) will *not* be expanded, allowing the direct use of these in file names.

---

<code>\file_path_include:n</code>	<code>\file_path_include:n {&lt;path&gt;}</code>
-----------------------------------	--

---

Adds  $\langle path \rangle$  to the list of those used to search for files by the `\file_input:n` and `\file_if_exist:n` function. The assignment is local.

---

<code>\file_path_remove:n</code>	<code>\file_path_remove:n {&lt;path&gt;}</code>
----------------------------------	---

---

Removes  $\langle path \rangle$  from the list of those used to search for files by the `\file_input:n` and `\file_if_exist:n` function. The assignment is local.

---

<code>\file_list</code>	<code>\file_list:</code>
-------------------------	--------------------------

---

This function will list all files loaded using `\file_input:n` in the log file.

## 170 Internal file functions

---

<code>\g_file_stack_seq</code>	Stores the stack of nested files loaded using <code>\file_input:n</code> . This is needed to restore the appropriate file name to <code>\g_file_current_name_tl</code> at the end of each file.
--------------------------------	---

---

<u>\g_file_record_seq</u>	Stores the name of every file loaded using <code>\file_input:n</code> . In contrast to <code>\g_file_stack_seq</code> , no items are ever removed from this sequence.
<u>\l_file_internal_name_tl</u>	Used to return the full name of a file for internal use.
<u>\l_file_search_path_seq</u>	The sequence of file paths to search when loading a file.
<u>\l_file_internal_saved_path_seq</u>	When loaded on top of L <sup>A</sup> T <sub>E</sub> X 2 <sub>ε</sub> , there is a need to save the search path so that <code>\input@path</code> can be used as appropriate.
<u>\l_file_internal_seq</u> New: 2011-09-06	When loaded on top of L <sup>A</sup> T <sub>E</sub> X 2 <sub>ε</sub> , there is a need to convert the comma lists <code>\input@path</code> and <code>\@filelist</code> to sequences.



## Part XXII

# The l3fp package

## Floating-point operations

A floating point number is one which is stored as a mantissa and a separate exponent. This module implements arithmetic using radix 10 floating point numbers. This means that the mantissa should be a real number in the range  $1 \leq |x| < 10$ , with the exponent given as an integer between  $-99$  and  $99$ . In the input, the exponent part is represented starting with an `e`. As this is a low-level module, error-checking is minimal. Numbers which are too large for the floating point unit to handle will result in errors, either from `TEX` or from `LATEX`. The `LATEX` code does not check that the input will not overflow, hence the possibility of a `TEX` error. On the other hand, numbers which are too small will be dropped, which will mean that extra decimal digits will simply be lost.

When parsing numbers, any missing parts will be interpreted as zero. So for example

```
\fp_set:Nn \l_my_fp { }  
\fp_set:Nn \l_my_fp { . }  
\fp_set:Nn \l_my_fp { - }
```

will all be interpreted as zero values without raising an error.

Operations which give an undefined result (such as division by 0) will not lead to errors. Instead special marker values are returned, which can be tested for using for example `\fp_if_undefined:N(TF)`. In this way it is possible to work with asymptotic functions without first checking the input. If these special values are carried forward in calculations they will be treated as 0.

Floating point numbers are stored in the `fp` floating point variable type. This has a standard range of functions for variable management.

### 171 Floating-point variables

---

<code>\fp_new:N</code>	<code>\fp_new:N</code> <i>&lt;floating point variable&gt;</i>
------------------------	---

<code>\fp_new:c</code>	Creates a new <i>&lt;floating point variable&gt;</i> or raises an error if the name is already taken. The declaration is global. The <i>&lt;floating point&gt;</i> will initially be set to <code>+0.000000000e0</code> (the zero floating point).
------------------------	--

---

<code>\fp_const:Nn</code>	<code>\fp_const:Nn</code> <i>&lt;floating point variable&gt;</i> <i>{&lt;value&gt;}</i>
---------------------------	---

<code>\fp_const:cn</code>	Creates a new constant <i>&lt;floating point variable&gt;</i> or raises an error if the name is already taken. The value of the <i>&lt;floating point variable&gt;</i> will be set globally to the <i>&lt;value&gt;</i> .
---------------------------	---

---

<code>\fp_set_eq:NN</code>	<code>\fp_set_eq:NN</code> <i>&lt;fp var1&gt;</i> <i>&lt;fp var2&gt;</i>
----------------------------	--

<code>\fp_set_eq:(cN Nc cc)</code>	Sets the value of <i>&lt;floating point variable1&gt;</i> equal to that of <i>&lt;floating point variable2&gt;</i> .
------------------------------------	--

<code>\fp_gset_eq:NN</code>	
<code>\fp_gset_eq:(cN Nc cc)</code>	

---

---

<code>\fp_zero:N</code>	<code>\fp_zero:N</code> <i>&lt;floating point variable&gt;</i>
<code>\fp_zero:c</code>	Sets the <i>&lt;floating point variable&gt;</i> to +0.000000000e0.
<code>\fp_gzero:N</code>	
<code>\fp_gzero:c</code>	

---



---

<code>\fp_zero_new:N</code>	<code>\fp_zero_new:N</code> <i>&lt;floating point variable&gt;</i>
<code>\fp_zero_new:c</code>	Ensures that the <i>&lt;floating point variable&gt;</i> exists globally by applying <code>\fp_new:N</code> if necessary, then applies <code>\fp_(g)zero:N</code> to leave the <i>&lt;floating point variable&gt;</i> set to zero.
<code>\fp_gzero_new:N</code>	
<code>\fp_gzero_new:c</code>	

---

New: 2012-01-07

---



---

<code>\fp_set:Nn</code>	<code>\fp_set:Nn</code> <i>&lt;floating point variable&gt;</i> { <i>&lt;value&gt;</i> }
<code>\fp_set:cn</code>	Sets the <i>&lt;floating point variable&gt;</i> variable to <i>&lt;value&gt;</i> .
<code>\fp_gset:Nn</code>	
<code>\fp_gset:cn</code>	

---



---

<code>\fp_set_from_dim:Nn</code>	<code>\fp_set_from_dim:Nn</code> <i>&lt;floating point variable&gt;</i> { <i>&lt;dimexpr&gt;</i> }
<code>\fp_set_from_dim:cn</code>	Sets the <i>&lt;floating point variable&gt;</i> to the distance represented by the <i>&lt;dimension expression&gt;</i> in the units points. This means that distances given in other units are first converted to points before being assigned to the <i>&lt;floating point variable&gt;</i> .
<code>\fp_gset_from_dim:Nn</code>	
<code>\fp_gset_from_dim:cn</code>	

---



---

<code>\fp_use:N</code> ☆	<code>\fp_use:N</code> <i>&lt;floating point variable&gt;</i>
<code>\fp_use:c</code> ☆	Inserts the value of the <i>&lt;floating point variable&gt;</i> into the input stream. The value will be given as a real number without any exponent part, and will always include a decimal point. For example,

---

```

\fp_new:Nn \test
\fp_set:Nn \test { 1.234 e 5 }
\fp_use:N \test

```

will insert 12345.00000 into the input stream. As illustrated, a floating point will always be inserted with ten significant digits given. Very large and very small values will include additional zeros for place value.

---

<code>\fp_show:N</code>	<code>\fp_show:N</code> <i>&lt;floating point variable&gt;</i>
<code>\fp_show:c</code>	Displays the content of the <i>&lt;floating point variable&gt;</i> on the terminal.

---

## 172 Conversion of floating point values to other formats

It is useful to be able to convert floating point variables to other forms. These functions are expandable, so that the material can be used in a variety of contexts. The `\fp_use:N`

function should also be consulted in this context, as it will insert the value of the floating point variable as a real number.

---

<code>\fp_to_dim:N</code> ☆	<code>\fp_to_dim:N</code> $\langle$ <i>floating point variable</i> $\rangle$
<code>\fp_to_dim:c</code> ☆	Inserts the value of the $\langle$ <i>floating point variable</i> $\rangle$ into the input stream converted into a dimension in points.

---

<code>\fp_to_int:N</code> ☆	<code>\fp_to_int:N</code> $\langle$ <i>floating point variable</i> $\rangle$
<code>\fp_to_int:c</code> ☆	Inserts the integer value of the $\langle$ <i>floating point variable</i> $\rangle$ into the input stream. The decimal part of the number will not be included, but will be used to round the integer.

---

<code>\fp_to_tl:N</code> ☆	<code>\fp_to_tl:N</code> $\langle$ <i>floating point variable</i> $\rangle$
<code>\fp_to_tl:c</code> ☆	Inserts a representation of the $\langle$ <i>floating point variable</i> $\rangle$ into the input stream as a token list. The representation follows the conventions of a pocket calculator:

---

Floating point value	Representation
1.234000000000e0	1.234
-1.234000000000e0	-1.234
1.234000000000e3	1234
1.234000000000e13	1234e13
1.234000000000e-1	0.1234
1.234000000000e-2	0.01234
1.234000000000e-3	1.234e-3

---

Notice that trailing zeros are removed in this process, and that numbers which do not require a decimal part do *not* include a decimal marker.

## 173 Rounding floating point values

The module can round floating point values to either decimal places or significant figures using the usual method in which exact halves are rounded up.

---

<code>\fp_round_figures:Nn</code>	<code>\fp_round_figures:Nn</code> $\langle$ <i>floating point variable</i> $\rangle$ $\{ \langle$ <i>target</i> $\rangle \}$
<code>\fp_round_figures:cn</code>	
<code>\fp_ground_figures:Nn</code>	Rounds the $\langle$ <i>floating point variable</i> $\rangle$ to the $\langle$ <i>target</i> $\rangle$ number of significant figures (an integer expression).
<code>\fp_ground_figures:cn</code>	

---

<code>\fp_round_places:Nn</code>	<code>\fp_round_places:Nn</code> $\langle$ <i>floating point variable</i> $\rangle$ $\{ \langle$ <i>target</i> $\rangle \}$
<code>\fp_round_places:cn</code>	
<code>\fp_ground_places:Nn</code>	Rounds the $\langle$ <i>floating point variable</i> $\rangle$ to the $\langle$ <i>target</i> $\rangle$ number of decimal places (an integer expression).
<code>\fp_ground_places:cn</code>	

---

## 174 Floating-point conditionals

---

<code>\fp_if_undefined_p:N</code> ★	<code>\fp_if_undefined_p:N</code> $\langle fixed\text{-}point \rangle$
<code>\fp_if_undefined:NTF</code> ★	<code>\fp_if_undefined:NTF</code> $\langle fixed\text{-}point \rangle$ $\{\langle true\ code \rangle\}$ $\{\langle false\ code \rangle\}$

---

Tests if  $\langle floating\ point \rangle$  is undefined (*i.e.* equal to the special `\c_undefined_fp` variable).

---

<code>\fp_if_zero_p:N</code> ★	<code>\fp_if_zero_p:N</code> $\langle fixed\text{-}point \rangle$
<code>\fp_if_zero:NTF</code> ★	<code>\fp_if_zero:NTF</code> $\langle fixed\text{-}point \rangle$ $\{\langle true\ code \rangle\}$ $\{\langle false\ code \rangle\}$

---

Tests if  $\langle floating\ point \rangle$  is equal to zero (*i.e.* equal to the special `\c_zero_fp` variable).

---

<code>\fp_compare:nNnTF</code>	<code>\fp_compare:nNnTF</code>
	$\{\langle floating\ point_1 \rangle\}$ $\langle relation \rangle$ $\{\langle floating\ point_2 \rangle\}$
	$\{\langle true\ code \rangle\}$ $\{\langle false\ code \rangle\}$

---

This function compared the two  $\langle floating\ point \rangle$  values, which may be stored as `fp` variables, using the  $\langle relation \rangle$ :

Equal	=
Greater than	>
Less than	<

The tests treat undefined floating points as zero as the comparison is intended for real numbers only.

---

<code>\fp_compare:nTF</code>	<code>\fp_compare:nTF</code>
	$\{\langle floating\ point_1 \rangle\}$ $\langle relation \rangle$ $\langle floating\ point_2 \rangle$ $\}$
	$\{\langle true\ code \rangle\}$ $\{\langle false\ code \rangle\}$

---

This function compared the two  $\langle floating\ point \rangle$  values, which may be stored as `fp` variables, using the  $\langle relation \rangle$ :

Equal	= or ==
Greater than	>
Greater than or equal	>=
Less than	<
Less than or equal	<=
Not equal	!=

The tests treat undefined floating points as zero as the comparison is intended for real numbers only.

## 175 Unary floating-point operations

The unary operations alter the value stored within an `fp` variable.

---

<code>\fp_abs:N</code>	<code>\fp_abs:N</code> <i>&lt;floating point variable&gt;</i>
<code>\fp_abs:c</code>	
<code>\fp_gabs:N</code>	Converts the <i>&lt;floating point variable&gt;</i> to its absolute value.
<code>\fp_gabs:c</code>	

---

<code>\fp_neg:N</code>	<code>\fp_neg:N</code> <i>&lt;floating point variable&gt;</i>
<code>\fp_neg:c</code>	
<code>\fp_gneg:N</code>	Reverse the sign of the <i>&lt;floating point variable&gt;</i> .
<code>\fp_gneg:c</code>	

---

## 176 Floating-point arithmetic

Binary arithmetic operations act on the value stored in an `fp`, so for example

```
\fp_set:Nn \l_my_fp { 1.234 }
\fp_sub:Nn \l_my_fp { 5.678 }
```

sets `\l_my_fp` to the result of  $1.234 - 5.678$  (*i.e.*  $-4.444$ ).

---

<code>\fp_add:Nn</code>	<code>\fp_add:Nn</code> <i>&lt;floating point&gt;</i> { <i>&lt;value&gt;</i> }
<code>\fp_add:cn</code>	
<code>\fp_gadd:Nn</code>	Adds the <i>&lt;value&gt;</i> to the <i>&lt;floating point&gt;</i> .
<code>\fp_gadd:cn</code>	

---

<code>\fp_sub:Nn</code>	<code>\fp_sub:Nn</code> <i>&lt;floating point&gt;</i> { <i>&lt;value&gt;</i> }
<code>\fp_sub:cn</code>	
<code>\fp_gsub:Nn</code>	Subtracts the <i>&lt;value&gt;</i> from the <i>&lt;floating point&gt;</i> .
<code>\fp_gsub:cn</code>	

---

<code>\fp_mul:Nn</code>	<code>\fp_mul:Nn</code> <i>&lt;floating point&gt;</i> { <i>&lt;value&gt;</i> }
<code>\fp_mul:cn</code>	
<code>\fp_gmul:Nn</code>	Multiplies the <i>&lt;floating point&gt;</i> by the <i>&lt;value&gt;</i> .
<code>\fp_gmul:cn</code>	

---

<code>\fp_div:Nn</code>	<code>\fp_div:Nn</code> <i>&lt;floating point&gt;</i> { <i>&lt;value&gt;</i> }
<code>\fp_div:cn</code>	
<code>\fp_gdiv:Nn</code>	Divides the <i>&lt;floating point&gt;</i> by the <i>&lt;value&gt;</i> , making the assignment within the current <code>TeX</code> group level. If the <i>&lt;value&gt;</i> is zero, the <i>&lt;floating point&gt;</i> will be set to <code>\c_undefined_fp</code> .
<code>\fp_gdiv:cn</code>	

---

## 177 Floating-point power operations

---

<code>\fp_pow:Nn</code>	<code>\fp_pow:Nn</code> <i>&lt;floating point&gt;</i> { <i>&lt;value&gt;</i> }
<code>\fp_pow:cn</code>	
<code>\fp_gpow:Nn</code>	Raises the <i>&lt;floating point&gt;</i> to the given <i>&lt;value&gt;</i> . If the <i>&lt;floating point&gt;</i> is negative, then the <i>&lt;value&gt;</i> should be either a positive real number or a negative integer. If the <i>&lt;floating point&gt;</i> is positive, then the <i>&lt;value&gt;</i> may be any real value. Mathematically invalid operations such as $0^0$ will give set the <i>&lt;floating point&gt;</i> to to <code>\c_undefined_fp</code> .
<code>\fp_gpow:cn</code>	

---

## 178 Exponential and logarithm functions

<u>\fp_exp:Nn</u>	<u>\fp_exp:Nn</u> <i>&lt;floating point&gt;</i> { <i>&lt;value&gt;</i> }
<u>\fp_exp:cn</u>	
<u>\fp_gexp:Nn</u>	Calculates the exponential of the <i>&lt;value&gt;</i> and assigns this to the <i>&lt;floating point&gt;</i> .
<u>\fp_gexp:cn</u>	
<hr/>	
<u>\fp_ln:Nn</u>	<u>\fp_ln:Nn</u> <i>&lt;floating point&gt;</i> { <i>&lt;value&gt;</i> }
<u>\fp_ln:cn</u>	
<u>\fp_gln:Nn</u>	Calculates the natural logarithm of the <i>&lt;value&gt;</i> and assigns this to the <i>&lt;floating point&gt;</i> .
<u>\fp_gln:cn</u>	

## 179 Trigonometric functions

The trigonometric functions all work in radians. They accept a maximum input value of 100 000 000, as there are issues with range reduction and very large input values.

<u>\fp_sin:Nn</u>	<u>\fp_sin:Nn</u> <i>&lt;floating point&gt;</i> { <i>&lt;value&gt;</i> }
<u>\fp_sin:cn</u>	
<u>\fp_gsin:Nn</u>	Assigns the sine of the <i>&lt;value&gt;</i> to the <i>&lt;floating point&gt;</i> . The <i>&lt;value&gt;</i> should be given in radians.
<u>\fp_gsin:cn</u>	
<hr/>	
<u>\fp_cos:Nn</u>	<u>\fp_cos:Nn</u> <i>&lt;floating point&gt;</i> { <i>&lt;value&gt;</i> }
<u>\fp_cos:cn</u>	
<u>\fp_gcos:Nn</u>	Assigns the cosine of the <i>&lt;value&gt;</i> to the <i>&lt;floating point&gt;</i> . The <i>&lt;value&gt;</i> should be given in radians.
<u>\fp_gcos:cn</u>	
<hr/>	
<u>\fp_tan:Nn</u>	<u>\fp_tan:Nn</u> <i>&lt;floating point&gt;</i> { <i>&lt;value&gt;</i> }
<u>\fp_tan:cn</u>	
<u>\fp_gtan:Nn</u>	Assigns the tangent of the <i>&lt;value&gt;</i> to the <i>&lt;floating point&gt;</i> . The <i>&lt;value&gt;</i> should be given in radians.
<u>\fp_gtan:cn</u>	

## 180 Constant floating point values

<u>\c_e_fp</u>	The value of the base of natural numbers, e.
<u>\c_one_fp</u>	A floating point variable with permanent value 1: used for speeding up some comparisons.
<u>\c_pi_fp</u>	The value of $\pi$ .

---

<code>\c_undefined_fp</code>	A special marker floating point variable representing the result of an operation which does not give a defined result (such as division by 0).
------------------------------	--

---

<code>\c_zero_fp</code>	A permanently zero floating point variable.
-------------------------	---

---

## 181 Notes on the floating point unit

As calculation of the elemental transcendental functions is computationally expensive compared to storage of results, after calculating a trigonometric function, exponent, *etc.* the module stored the result for reuse. Thus the performance of the module for repeated operations, most probably trigonometric functions, should be much higher than if the values were re-calculated every time they were needed.

Anyone with experience of programming floating point calculations will know that this is a complex area. The aim of the unit is to be accurate enough for the likely applications in a typesetting context. The arithmetic operations are therefore intended to provide ten digit accuracy with the last digit accurate to  $\pm 1$ . The elemental transcendental functions may not provide such high accuracy in every case, although the design aim has been to provide 10 digit accuracy for cases likely to be relevant in typesetting situations. A good overview of the challenges in this area can be found in J.-M. Muller, *Elementary functions: algorithms and implementation*, 2nd edition, Birkhäuser Boston, New York, USA, 2006.

The internal representation of numbers is tuned to the needs of the underlying T<sub>E</sub>X system. This means that the format is somewhat different from that used in, for example, computer floating point units. Programming in T<sub>E</sub>X makes it most convenient to use a radix 10 system, using T<sub>E</sub>X `count` registers for storage and taking advantage where possible of delimited arguments.

## Part XXIII

# The l3luatex package

## LuaTeX-specific functions

### 182 Breaking out to Lua

The LuaTeX engine provides access to the Lua programming language, and with it access to the “internals” of TeX. In order to use this within the framework provided here, a family of functions is available. When used with pdfTeX or XeTeX these will raise an error: use `\luatex_if_engine:T` to avoid this. Details of coding the LuaTeX engine are detailed in the LuaTeX manual.

---

<code>\lua_now:n</code>	★	<code>\lua_now:n {⟨token list⟩}</code>
-------------------------	---	--

---

<code>\lua_now:x</code>	★	
-------------------------	---	--

The *⟨token list⟩* is first tokenized by TeX, which will include converting line ends to spaces in the usual TeX manner and which respects currently-applicable TeX category codes. The resulting *⟨Lua input⟩* is passed to the Lua interpreter for processing. Each `\lua_now:n` block is treated by Lua as a separate chunk. The Lua interpreter will execute the *⟨Lua input⟩* immediately, and in an expandable manner.

**TeXhackers note:** `\lua_now:x` is the LuaTeX primitive `\directlua` renamed.

---

<code>\lua_shipout:n</code>		<code>\lua_shipout:x {⟨token list⟩}</code>
-----------------------------	--	--

---

<code>\lua_shipout:x</code>		
-----------------------------	--	--

The *⟨token list⟩* is first tokenized by TeX, which will include converting line ends to spaces in the usual TeX manner and which respects currently-applicable TeX category codes. The resulting *⟨Lua input⟩* is passed to the Lua interpreter when the current page is finalised (*i.e.* at shipout). Each `\lua_shipout:n` block is treated by Lua as a separate chunk. The Lua interpreter will execute the *⟨Lua input⟩* during the page-building routine: no TeX expansion of the *⟨Lua input⟩* will occur at this stage.

**TeXhackers note:** At a TeX level, the *⟨Lua input⟩* is stored as a “whatsit”.



---

<code>\lua_shipout_x:n</code> <code>\lua_shipout_x:x</code>	<code>\lua_shipout:n {⟨token list⟩}</code> <p>The <i>⟨token list⟩</i> is first tokenized by <math>\text{\TeX}</math>, which will include converting line ends to spaces in the usual <math>\text{\TeX}</math> manner and which respects currently-applicable <math>\text{\TeX}</math> category codes. The resulting <i>⟨Lua input⟩</i> is passed to the Lua interpreter when the current page is finalised (<i>i.e.</i> at shipout). Each <code>\lua_shipout:n</code> block is treated by Lua as a separate chunk. The Lua interpreter will execute the <i>⟨Lua input⟩</i> during the page-building routine: the <i>⟨Lua input⟩</i> is expanded during this process in addition to any expansion when the argument was read. This makes these functions suitable for including material finalised during the page building process (such as the page number).</p>
--	--

---

**$\text{\TeX}$ hackers note:** `\lua_shipout_x:n` is the Lua $\text{\TeX}$  primitive `\latelua` named using the  $\text{\LaTeX}$ 3 scheme.

At a  $\text{\TeX}$  level, the *⟨Lua input⟩* is stored as a “whatsit”.

## 183 Category code tables

As well as providing methods to break out into Lua, there are places where additional  $\text{\LaTeX}$ 3 functions are provided by the Lua $\text{\TeX}$  engine. In particular, Lua $\text{\TeX}$  provides category code tables. These can be used to ensure that a set of category codes are in force in a more robust way than is possible with other engines. These are therefore used by `\ExplSyntaxOn` and `\ExplSyntaxOff` when using the Lua $\text{\TeX}$  engine.

---

<code>\cctab_new:N</code>	<code>\cctab_new:N ⟨category code table⟩</code> <p>Creates a new category code table, initially with the codes as used by <code>\InitEX</code>.</p>
---------------------------	--

---

<code>\cctab_gset:Nn</code>	<code>\cctab_gset:Nn ⟨category code table⟩ {⟨category code set up⟩}</code> <p>Sets the <i>⟨category code table⟩</i> to apply the category codes which apply when the prevailing regime is modified by the <i>⟨category code set up⟩</i>. Thus within a standard code block the starting point will be the code applied by <code>\c_code_cctab</code>. The assignment of the table is global: the underlying primitive does not respect grouping.</p>
-----------------------------	---

---

<code>\cctab_begin:N</code>	<code>\cctab_begin:N ⟨category code table⟩</code> <p>Switches the category codes in force to those stored in the <i>⟨category code table⟩</i>. The prevailing codes before the function is called are added to a stack, for use with <code>\cctab_end:</code>.</p>
-----------------------------	---

---

<code>\cctab_end</code>	<code>\cctab_end:</code> <p>Ends the scope of a <i>⟨category code table⟩</i> started using <code>\cctab_begin:N</code>, retuning the codes to those in force before the matching <code>\cctab_begin:N</code> was used.</p>
-------------------------	---

---

<code>\c_code_cctab</code>	<p>Category code table for the code environment. This does not include setting the behaviour of the line-end character, which is only altered by <code>\ExplSyntaxOn</code>.</p>
----------------------------	--

---

<u><code>\c_document_cctab</code></u>	Category code table for a standard L <sup>A</sup> T <sub>E</sub> X document. This does not include setting the behaviour of the line-end character, which is only altered by <code>\ExplSyntaxOff</code> .
<u><code>\c_initex_cctab</code></u>	Category code table as set up by Init <sub>E</sub> X.
<u><code>\c_other_cctab</code></u>	Category code table where all characters have category code 12 (other).
<u><code>\c_str_cctab</code></u>	Category code table where all characters have category code 12 (other) with the exception of spaces, which have category code 10 (space).

# Index

The italic numbers denote the pages where the corresponding entry is described, numbers underlined point to the definition, all others indicate the places where it is used.

Symbols	
<code>\.bool_gset:N</code> . . . . .	<i>154</i>
<code>\.bool_gset_inverse:N</code> . . . . .	<i>154</i>
<code>\.bool_set:N</code> . . . . .	<i>153</i>
<code>\.bool_set_inverse:N</code> . . . . .	<i>154</i>
<code>\.choice:</code> . . . . .	<i>154</i>
<code>\.choice_code:n</code> . . . . .	<i>154</i>
<code>\.choice_code:x</code> . . . . .	<i>154</i>
<code>\.choices:nn</code> . . . . .	<i>154</i>
<code>\.clist_gset:N</code> . . . . .	<i>154</i>
<code>\.clist_gset:c</code> . . . . .	<i>154</i>
<code>\.clist_set:N</code> . . . . .	<i>154</i>
<code>\.clist_set:c</code> . . . . .	<i>154</i>
<code>\.code:n</code> . . . . .	<i>155</i>
<code>\.code:x</code> . . . . .	<i>155</i>
<code>\.default:V</code> . . . . .	<i>155</i>
<code>\.default:n</code> . . . . .	<i>155</i>
<code>\.dim_gset:N</code> . . . . .	<i>155</i>
<code>\.dim_gset:c</code> . . . . .	<i>155</i>
<code>\.dim_set:N</code> . . . . .	<i>155</i>
<code>\.dim_set:c</code> . . . . .	<i>155</i>
<code>\.fp_gset:N</code> . . . . .	<i>155</i>
<code>\.fp_gset:c</code> . . . . .	<i>155</i>
<code>\.fp_set:N</code> . . . . .	<i>155</i>
<code>\.fp_set:c</code> . . . . .	<i>155</i>
<code>\.generate_choices:n</code> . . . . .	<i>156</i>
<code>\.int_gset:N</code> . . . . .	<i>156</i>
<code>\.int_gset:c</code> . . . . .	<i>156</i>
<code>\.int_set:N</code> . . . . .	<i>156</i>
<code>\.int_set:c</code> . . . . .	<i>156</i>
<code>\.meta:n</code> . . . . .	<i>156</i>
<code>\.meta:x</code> . . . . .	<i>156</i>
<code>\.multichoice:</code> . . . . .	<i>156</i>
<code>\.multichoice:nn</code> . . . . .	<i>156</i>
<code>\.skip_gset:N</code> . . . . .	<i>156</i>
<code>\.skip_gset:c</code> . . . . .	<i>156</i>
<code>\.skip_set:N</code> . . . . .	<i>156</i>
<code>\.skip_set:c</code> . . . . .	<i>156</i>
<code>\.tl_gset:N</code> . . . . .	<i>157</i>
<code>\.tl_gset:c</code> . . . . .	<i>157</i>
<code>\.tl_gset_x:N</code> . . . . .	<i>157</i>
<code>\.tl_gset_x:c</code> . . . . .	<i>157</i>
<code>\.tl_set:N</code> . . . . .	<i>157</i>
<code>\.tl_set:c</code> . . . . .	<i>157</i>
<code>\.tl_set_x:N</code> . . . . .	<i>157</i>
<code>\.tl_set_x:c</code> . . . . .	<i>157</i>
<code>\.value_forbidden:</code> . . . . .	<i>157</i>
<code>\.value_required:</code> . . . . .	<i>157</i>
<code>\:::</code> . . . . .	<i>32</i>
<code>\::N</code> . . . . .	<i>32</i>
<code>\::V</code> . . . . .	<i>32</i>
<code>\::c</code> . . . . .	<i>32</i>
<code>\::f</code> . . . . .	<i>32</i>
<code>\::n</code> . . . . .	<i>32</i>
<code>\::o</code> . . . . .	<i>32</i>
<code>\::v</code> . . . . .	<i>32</i>
<code>\::x</code> . . . . .	<i>32</i>
<b>B</b>	
<code>\bool_gset:Nn</code> . . . . .	<i>36</i>
<code>\bool_gset_eq:NN</code> . . . . .	<i>36</i>
<code>\bool_gset_false:N</code> . . . . .	<i>35</i>
<code>\bool_gset_true:N</code> . . . . .	<i>35</i>
<code>\bool_if:NTF</code> . . . . .	<i>36</i>
<code>\bool_if:nTF</code> . . . . .	<i>37</i>
<code>\bool_new:N</code> . . . . .	<i>35</i>
<code>\bool_not_p:n</code> . . . . .	<i>37</i>
<code>\bool_set:Nn</code> . . . . .	<i>36</i>
<code>\bool_set_eq:NN</code> . . . . .	<i>36</i>
<code>\bool_set_false:N</code> . . . . .	<i>35</i>
<code>\bool_set_true:N</code> . . . . .	<i>35</i>
<code>\bool_until_do:Nn</code> . . . . .	<i>37</i>
<code>\bool_until_do:nn</code> . . . . .	<i>38</i>
<code>\bool_while_do:Nn</code> . . . . .	<i>37</i>
<code>\bool_while_do:nn</code> . . . . .	<i>38</i>
<code>\bool_xor_p:nn</code> . . . . .	<i>37</i>
<code>\box_clear:N</code> . . . . .	<i>122</i>
<code>\box_clear_new:N</code> . . . . .	<i>122</i>
<code>\box_clip:N</code> . . . . .	<i>126</i>
<code>\box_dp:N</code> . . . . .	<i>123</i>
<code>\box_gclear:N</code> . . . . .	<i>122</i>
<code>\box_gclear_new:N</code> . . . . .	<i>122</i>
<code>\box_gset_eq:NN</code> . . . . .	<i>122</i>
<code>\box_gset_eq_clear:NN</code> . . . . .	<i>122</i>
<code>\box_gset_to_last:N</code> . . . . .	<i>127</i>
<code>\box_ht:N</code> . . . . .	<i>123</i>
<code>\box_if_empty:NTF</code> . . . . .	<i>126</i>
<code>\box_if_horizontal:NTF</code> . . . . .	<i>126</i>



\char_set_catcode_active:N	49	\clist_concat:NNN	109
\char_set_catcode_active:n	49	\clist_const:Nn	115
\char_set_catcode_alignment:N	49	\clist_gclear:N	108
\char_set_catcode_alignment:n	49	\clist_gclear_new:N	108
\char_set_catcode_comment:N	49	\clist_gconcat:NNN	109
\char_set_catcode_comment:n	49	\clist_get:NN	113
\char_set_catcode_end_line:N	49	\clist_gpop:NN	114
\char_set_catcode_end_line:n	49	\clist_gpush:Nn	114
\char_set_catcode_escape:N	49	\clist_gput_left:Nn	109
\char_set_catcode_escape:n	49	\clist_gput_right:Nn	109
\char_set_catcode_group_begin:N	49	\clist_gremove_all:Nn	110
\char_set_catcode_group_begin:n	49	\clist_gremove_duplicates:N	110
\char_set_catcode_group_end:N	49	\clist_gset:Nn	109
\char_set_catcode_group_end:n	49	\clist_gset_eq:NN	108
\char_set_catcode_ignore:N	49	\clist_gset_from_seq:NN	115
\char_set_catcode_ignore:n	49	\clist_if_empty:NTF	110
\char_set_catcode_invalid:N	49	\clist_if_empty:nTF	115
\char_set_catcode_invalid:n	49	\clist_if_eq:NNTF	110
\char_set_catcode_letter:N	49	\clist_if_in:NnTF	111
\char_set_catcode_letter:n	49	\clist_item:Nn	115
\char_set_catcode_math_subscript:N	49	\clist_length:N	114
\char_set_catcode_math_subscript:n	49	\clist_map_break	112
\char_set_catcode_math_superscript:N	49	\clist_map_break:n	113
\char_set_catcode_math_superscript:n	49	\clist_map_function:NN	111
\char_set_catcode_math_toggle:N	49	\clist_map_inline:Nn	111
\char_set_catcode_math_toggle:n	49	\clist_map_variable:NNn	112
\char_set_catcode_other:N	49	\clist_new:N	108
\char_set_catcode_other:n	49	\clist_pop:NN	113
\char_set_catcode_parameter:N	49	\clist_push:Nn	114
\char_set_catcode_parameter:n	49	\clist_put_left:Nn	109
\char_set_catcode_space:N	49	\clist_put_right:Nn	109
\char_set_catcode_space:n	49	\clist_remove_all:Nn	110
\char_set_lccode:nn	50	\clist_remove_duplicates:N	110
\char_set_mathcode:nn	51	\clist_set:Nn	109
\char_set_sfcode:nn	51	\clist_set_eq:NN	108
\char_set_uccode:nn	51	\clist_set_from_seq:NN	115
\char_show_value_catcode:n	50	\clist_show:N	114
\char_show_value_lccode:n	50	\clist_show:n	114
\char_show_value_mathcode:n	51	\clist_trim_spaces:n	115
\char_show_value_sfcode:n	52	\clist_use:N	109
\char_show_value_uccode:n	51	\coffin_attach:NnnNnnnn	134
\char_value_catcode:n	50	\coffin_clear:N	132
\char_value_lccode:n	50	\coffin_display_handles:cn	135
\char_value_mathcode:n	51	\coffin_dp:N	135
\char_value_sfcode:n	51	\coffin_ht:N	135
\char_value_uccode:n	51	\coffin_join:NnnNnnnn	134
\chk_if_exist_cs:N	23	\coffin_mark_handle:Nnnn	135
\chk_if_free_cs:N	24	\coffin_new:N	132
\clist_clear:N	108	\coffin_resize:Nnn	133
\clist_clear_new:N	108	\coffin_rotate:Nn	133





\g_tmpb_skip .....	80	\if_true .....	23
\g_tmpb_tl .....	96	\if_vbox:N .....	131
\GetIdInfo .....	6	\int_abs:n .....	62
\group_align_safe_begin .....	41	\int_add:Nn .....	64
\group_align_safe_end .....	41	\int_compare:nNnTF .....	65
\group_begin .....	9	\int_compare:nTF .....	65
\group_end .....	9	\int_const:Nn .....	63
\group_insert_after:N .....	9	\int_decr:N .....	64
		\int_div_round:nn .....	62
<b>H</b>		\int_div_truncate:nn .....	63
\hbox:n .....	127	\int_do_until:nn .....	66
\hbox_gset:Nn .....	128	\int_do_until:nNnn .....	66
\hbox_gset:Nw .....	128	\int_do_while:nn .....	66
\hbox_gset_end .....	128	\int_do_while:nNnn .....	65
\hbox_gset_to_wd:Nnn .....	128	\int_eval:n .....	62
\hbox_overlap_left:n .....	128	\int_eval:w .....	72
\hbox_overlap_right:n .....	128	\int_eval_end .....	72
\hbox_set:Nn .....	128	\int_from_alph:n .....	69
\hbox_set:Nw .....	128	\int_from_base:nn .....	69
\hbox_set_end .....	128	\int_from_binary:n .....	69
\hbox_set_to_wd:Nnn .....	128	\int_from_hexadecimal:n .....	69
\hbox_to_wd:nn .....	128	\int_from_octal:n .....	69
\hbox_to_zero:n .....	128	\int_from_roman:n .....	69
\hbox_unpack:N .....	128	\int_gadd:Nn .....	64
\hbox_unpack_clear:N .....	129	\int_gdecr:N .....	64
\hcoffin_set:Nn .....	132	\int_get_digits:n .....	71
\hcoffin_set:Nw .....	132	\int_get_sign:n .....	71
\hcoffin_set_end .....	132	\int_gincr:N .....	64
		\int_gset:Nn .....	64
<b>I</b>		\int_gset_eq:NN .....	63
\if:w .....	23	\int_gsub:Nn .....	64
\if_bool:N .....	42	\int_gzero:N .....	63
\if_box_empty:N .....	131	\int_gzero_new:N .....	63
\if_case:w .....	72	\int_if_even:nTF .....	65
\if_catcode:w .....	23	\int_if_odd:nTF .....	65
\if_charcode:w .....	23	\int_incr:N .....	64
\if_cs_exist:N .....	23	\int_max:nn .....	63
\if_dim:w .....	83	\int_min:nn .....	63
\if_eof:w .....	142	\int_mod:nn .....	63
\if_false .....	23	\int_new:N .....	63
\if_hbox:N .....	131	\int_set:Nn .....	64
\if_int_compare:w .....	72	\int_set_eq:NN .....	63
\if_int_odd:w .....	72	\int_show:N .....	70
\if_meaning:w .....	23	\int_show:n .....	70
\if_mode_horizontal .....	23	\int_sub:Nn .....	64
\if_mode_inner .....	23	\int_to_Alph:n .....	67
\if_mode_math .....	23	\int_to_alph:n .....	67
\if_mode_vertical .....	23	\int_to_arabic:n .....	67
\if_num:w .....	72	\int_to_base:nn .....	68
\if_predicate:w .....	42	\int_to_binary:n .....	68





\msg_aux_show:Nnx	151	\muskip_sub:Nn	81
\msg_aux_show:x	151	\muskip_use:N	82
\msg_aux_use:nn	151	\muskip_zero:N	81
\msg_class_set:nn	146	\muskip_zero_new:N	81
\msg_critical:nnxxxx	146		
\msg_critical_text:n	145	O	
\msg_error:nnxxxx	147	\or	23, 72
\msg_error_text:n	145		
\msg_expandable_error:n	151	P	
\msg_expandable_kernel_error:nnnnnn	151	\pdfTeX_if_engineTF	22
\msg_fatal:nnxxxx	146	\peek_after:Nw	57
\msg_fatal_text:n	145	\peek_catcode:NTF	57
\msg_gset:nnnn	144	\peek_catcode_ignore_spaces:NTF	57
\msg_info:nnxxxx	147	\peek_catcode_remove:NTF	57
\msg_info_text:n	146	\peek_catcode_remove_ignore_spaces:NTF	
\msg_interrupt:xxx	149		58
\msg_kernel_error:nnxxxx	150	\peek_charcode:NTF	58
\msg_kernel_fatal:nnxxxx	150	\peek_charcode_ignore_spaces:NTF	58
\msg_kernel_info:nnxxxx	150	\peek_charcode_remove:NTF	58
\msg_kernel_new:nnnn	150	\peek_charcode_remove_ignore_spaces:NTF	
\msg_kernel_set:nnnn	150		58
\msg_kernel_warning:nnxxxx	150	\peek_gafter:Nw	57
\msg_line_context	145	\peek_meaning:NTF	58
\msg_line_number	145	\peek_meaning_ignore_spaces:NTF	59
\msg_log:nnxxxx	147	\peek_meaning_remove:NTF	59
\msg_log:x	149	\peek_meaning_remove_ignore_spaces:NTF	
\msg_new:nnnn	144		59
\msg_newline	148	\peek_N_typeTF	61
\msg_none:nnxxxx	147	\prg_break_point:n	42
\msg_redirect_class:nn	148	\prg_case_dim:nnn	39
\msg_redirect_module:nnn	148	\prg_case_int:nnn	38
\msg_redirect_name:nnn	148	\prg_case_str:nnn	39
\msg_set:nnnn	144	\prg_case_tl:Nnn	39
\msg_term:x	149	\prg_do_nothing	9
\msg_two_newlines	148	\prg_map_break:n	42
\msg_warning:nnxxxx	147	\prg_new_conditional:Npnn	33
\msg_warning_text:n	146	\prg_new_eq_conditional:NNn	35
\muskip_add:Nn	81	\prg_new_protected_conditional:Npnn	33
\muskip_eval:n	82	\prg_quicksort:n	42
\muskip_gadd:Nn	81	\prg_quicksort_compare:nnTF	43
\muskip_gset:Nn	81	\prg_quicksort_function:n	43
\muskip_gset_eq:NN	81	\prg_replicate:nn	40
\muskip_gsub:Nn	81	\prg_return_false	35
\muskip_gzero:N	81	\prg_return_true	35
\muskip_gzero_new:N	81	\prg_set_conditional:Npnn	33
\muskip_new:N	81	\prg_set_eq_conditional:NNn	35
\muskip_set:Nn	81	\prg_set_protected_conditional:Npnn	33
\muskip_set_eq:NN	81	\prg_stepwise_function:nnnn	40
\muskip_show:N	82	\prg_stepwise_inline:nnnn	40
\muskip_show:n	82	\prg_stepwise_variable:nnnNn	40

\prg_variable_get_scope:N	41	\quark_if_recursion_tail_stop:n	46
\prg_variable_get_type:N	42	\quark_if_recursion_tail_stop_do:Nn	46
\prop_clear:N	116	\quark_if_recursion_tail_stop_do:nn	46
\prop_clear_new:N	116	\quark_new:N	44
\prop_del:Nn	118		
\prop_gclear:N	116	<b>R</b>	
\prop_gclear_new:N	116	\reverse_if:N	23
\prop_gdel:Nn	118		
\prop_get:Nn	121	<b>S</b>	
\prop_get:NnN	117	\s_stop	46
\prop_get:NnNTF	118	\scan_align_safe_stop	41
\prop_gpop:NnN	117	\scan_new:N	46
\prop_gpop:NnNTF	120	\scan_stop	9
\prop_gput:Nnn	117	\seq_break	107
\prop_gput_if_new:Nnn	117	\seq_break:n	107
\prop_gset_eq:NN	116	\seq_clear:N	99
\prop_if_empty:NTF	118	\seq_clear_new:N	99
\prop_if_in:NnTF	118	\seq_concat:NNN	100
\prop_map_break	119	\seq_gclear:N	99
\prop_map_break:n	120	\seq_gclear_new:N	99
\prop_map_function:NN	119	\seq_gconcat:NNN	100
\prop_map_inline:Nn	119	\seq_get:NN	103
\prop_map_tokens:Nn	120	\seq_get_left:NN	100
\prop_new:N	116	\seq_get_left:NNTF	104
\prop_pop:NnN	117	\seq_get_right:NN	100
\prop_pop:NnNTF	119	\seq_get_right:NNTF	104
\prop_put:Nnn	117	\seq_gpop:NN	103
\prop_put_if_new:Nnn	117	\seq_gpop_left:NN	101
\prop_set_eq:NN	116	\seq_gpop_left:NNTF	104
\prop_show:N	120	\seq_gpop_right:NN	101
\prop_split:Nnn	121	\seq_gpop_right:NNTF	105
\prop_split:NnTF	121	\seq_gpush:Nn	104
\ProvidesExplClass	6	\seq_gput_left:Nn	100
\ProvidesExplFile	6	\seq_gput_right:Nn	100
\ProvidesExplPackage	6	\seq_gremove_all:Nn	101
		\seq_gremove_duplicates:N	101
<b>Q</b>		\seq_greverse:N	106
\q_mark	44	\seq_gset_eq:NN	99
\q_no_value	44	\seq_gset_filter:NNn	106
\q_prop	121	\seq_gset_from_clist:NN	106
\q_recursion_stop	45	\seq_gset_map:NNn	106
\q_stop	44	\seq_gset_split:Nnn	99
\q_tl_act_mark	98	\seq_if_empty:NTF	101
\q_tl_act_stop	98	\seq_if_empty_err_break:N	106
\quark_if_nil:NTF	45	\seq_if_in:NnTF	102
\quark_if_nil:nTF	45	\seq_item:n	106
\quark_if_no_value:NTF	45	\seq_item:Nn	105
\quark_if_no_value:nTF	45	\seq_length:N	105
\quark_if_recursion_tail_break:N	46	\seq_map_break	102
\quark_if_recursion_tail_stop:N	45	\seq_map_break:n	103

\seq_map_function:NN	4, 102	T	
\seq_map_inline:Nn	102	\tl_clear:N	85
\seq_map_variable:NNn	102	\tl_clear_new:N	86
\seq_mapthread_function:NNN	105	\tl_const:Nn	85
\seq_new:N	4, 99	\tl_expandable_lowercase:n	97
\seq_pop:NN	103	\tl_expandable_uppercase:n	97
\seq_pop_item_def	107	\tl_gclear:N	85
\seq_pop_left:NN	100	\tl_gclear_new:N	86
\seq_pop_left:NNTF	104	\tl_gput_left:Nn	86
\seq_pop_right:NN	101	\tl_gput_right:Nn	86
\seq_pop_right:NNTF	105	\tl_gremove_all:Nn	87
\seq_push:Nn	104	\tl_gremove_once:Nn	87
\seq_push_item_def:n	107	\tl_greplace_all:Nnn	87
\seq_put_left:Nn	100	\tl_greplace_once:Nnn	86
\seq_put_right:Nn	100	\tl_greverse:N	92
\seq_remove_all:Nn	101	\tl_gset:Nn	86
\seq_remove_duplicates:N	101	\tl_gset_eq:NN	86
\seq_reverse:N	106	\tl_gset_rescan:Nnn	87
\seq_set_eq:NN	99	\tl_gtrim_spaces:N	93
\seq_set_filter:NNn	106	\tl_head:n	93
\seq_set_from_clist:NN	106	\tl_head:w	93
\seq_set_map:NNn	106	\tl_if_blank:nTF	88
\seq_set_split:Nnn	99	\tl_if_empty:NNTF	88
\seq_show:N	104	\tl_if_empty:nTF	88
\seq_use:N	105	\tl_if_eq:NNTF	89
\skip_add:Nn	78	\tl_if_eq:nnTF	89
\skip_eval:n	79	\tl_if_head_eq_catcode:nNTF	94
\skip_gadd:Nn	78	\tl_if_head_eq_charcode:nNTF	95
\skip_gset:Nn	78	\tl_if_head_eq_meaning:nNTF	95
\skip_gset_eq:NN	79	\tl_if_head_group:nTF	95
\skip_gsub:Nn	79	\tl_if_head_N_type:nTF	95
\skip_gzero:N	78	\tl_if_head_space:nTF	95
\skip_gzero_new:N	78	\tl_if_in:NnTF	89
\skip_horizontal:N	82	\tl_if_in:nnTF	89
\skip_if_eq:nnTF	79	\tl_if_single:NNTF	89
\skip_if_infinite_glue:nTF	79	\tl_if_single:nTF	89
\skip_new:N	78	\tl_if_single_token:nTF	89
\skip_set:Nn	78	\tl_item:nn	98
\skip_set_eq:NN	79	\tl_length:N	92
\skip_show:N	80	\tl_length:n	91
\skip_show:n	80	\tl_length_tokens:n	97
\skip_split_finite_else_action:nnNN	83	\tl_map_break	91
\skip_sub:Nn	79	\tl_map_function:NN	90
\skip_use:N	80	\tl_map_function:nN	90
\skip_vertical:N	82	\tl_map_inline:Nn	90
\skip_zero:N	78	\tl_map_inline:nn	90
\skip_zero_new:N	78	\tl_map_variable:NNn	90
\str_head:n	94	\tl_map_variable:nNn	90
\str_if_eq:nnTF	22	\tl_new:N	85
\str_tail:n	94	\tl_put_left:Nn	86



\vbox_unpack:N .....	130	\vcoffin_set_end .....	133
\vbox_unpack_clear:N .....	130		
\vcoffin_set:Nnn .....	133		X
\vcoffin_set:Nnw .....	133	\xetex_if_engineTF .....	5, 22